

ISO 20022

## Cross-Border Transactions Currency Control Reporting

# Message Definition Report - Part 2

Approved by the Payments SEG on 8th of November 2021.

This document provides details of the Message Definitions for Cross-Border Transactions Currency Control Reporting - Fast Track Maintenance.

10 December 2021

# Table of Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Message Set Overview</b>	4
1.1	List of MessageDefinitions	4
<b>2</b>	<b>auth.018.001.03 ContractRegistrationRequestV03</b>	6
2.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	6
2.2	Structure	7
2.3	Constraints	8
2.4	Message Building Blocks	9
<b>3</b>	<b>auth.019.001.03 ContractRegistrationConfirmationV03</b>	20
3.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	20
3.2	Structure	20
3.3	Constraints	20
3.4	Message Building Blocks	21
<b>4</b>	<b>auth.020.001.03 ContractRegistrationClosureRequestV03</b>	26
4.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	26
4.2	Structure	26
4.3	Constraints	26
4.4	Message Building Blocks	27
<b>5</b>	<b>auth.021.001.03 ContractRegistrationAmendmentRequestV03</b>	30
5.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	30
5.2	Structure	30
5.3	Constraints	30
5.4	Message Building Blocks	31
<b>6</b>	<b>auth.022.001.03 ContractRegistrationStatementV03</b>	35
6.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	35
6.2	Structure	36
6.3	Constraints	37
6.4	Message Building Blocks	38
<b>7</b>	<b>auth.023.001.03 ContractRegistrationStatementRequestV03</b>	53
7.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	53
7.2	Structure	54
7.3	Constraints	54
7.4	Message Building Blocks	55
<b>8</b>	<b>auth.024.001.03 PaymentRegulatoryInformationNotificationV03</b>	61
8.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	61
8.2	Structure	62
8.3	Constraints	62
8.4	Message Building Blocks	63

<b>9</b>	<b>auth.025.001.03 CurrencyControlSupportingDocumentDeliveryV03</b> .....	72
9.1	MessageDefinition Functionality .....	72
9.2	Structure .....	72
9.3	Constraints .....	73
9.4	Message Building Blocks .....	73
<b>10</b>	<b>auth.026.001.03 CurrencyControlRequestOrLetterV03</b> .....	78
10.1	MessageDefinition Functionality .....	78
10.2	Structure .....	78
10.3	Constraints .....	78
10.4	Message Building Blocks .....	79
<b>11</b>	<b>auth.027.001.03 CurrencyControlStatusAdviceV03</b> .....	83
11.1	MessageDefinition Functionality .....	83
11.2	Structure .....	84
11.3	Constraints .....	85
11.4	Message Building Blocks .....	86
<b>12</b>	<b>Message Items Types</b> .....	102
12.1	MessageComponents .....	102
12.2	Message Datatypes .....	242

# 1 Message Set Overview

## Introduction

Message set defined for the creation of the Cross-Border Transaction Regulatory Reporting (Local name in Russia is "Currency Control") ISO 20022 messages as requested through the RU-CMPG (Russian Corporate Market Practice Group) Business Justification, approved on 22 July 2015.

New message set version (fast track maintenance 2021).

## 1.1 List of MessageDefinitions

The following table lists all MessageDefinitions described in this book.

MessageDefinition	Definition
auth.018.001.03 ContractRegistrationRequestV03	The ContractRegistrationRequest message is sent by the reporting party to the registration agent to initiate the registration of a new contract subject to currency control.
auth.019.001.03 ContractRegistrationConfirmationV03	The ContractRegistrationConfirmation message is sent by the registration agent to the reporting party to register the contract subject to currency control.
auth.020.001.03 ContractRegistrationClosureRequestV03	The ContractRegistrationClosureRequest message is sent by the reporting party to the registration agent to close the registered contract subject to currency control.
auth.021.001.03 ContractRegistrationAmendmentRequestV03	The ContractRegistrationAmendmentRequest message is sent by the reporting party to the registration agent to amend the registered contract subject to currency control.
auth.022.001.03 ContractRegistrationStatementV03	The ContractRegistrationStatement message is sent by the registration agent to the reporting party, in response to a request or at a pre-agreed date, to send a statement of the operations related to the registered contract subject to currency control.
auth.023.001.03 ContractRegistrationStatementRequestV03	The ContractRegistrationStatementRequest message is sent by the reporting party to the registration agent to request for a statement of the operations related to the registered contract subject to currency control.
auth.024.001.03 PaymentRegulatoryInformationNotificationV03	The PaymentRegulatoryInformationNotification message is sent by the reporting party to the registration agent to provide details on the transaction, when a payment has to be recorded against the registered currency control contract.  In some cases, the registration agent may also sent this message to the reporting party.
auth.025.001.03 CurrencyControlSupportingDocumentDeliveryV03	The CurrencyControlSupportingDocumentDelivery message is sent by either the reporting party (respectively the registration agent) or the registration agent (respectively the reporting party) in response to the supporting document request.
auth.026.001.03 CurrencyControlRequestOrLetterV03	The CurrencyControlRequestOrLetter message is sent by the reporting party (respectively the registration

MessageDefinition	Definition
	agent) to the registration agent (respectively the reporting party) to send a currency control related letter or to request for supporting documents.
auth.027.001.03 CurrencyControlStatusAdviceV03	<p>The CurrencyControlStatusAdvice message is sent by either the reporting party (respectively the registration agent) or the registration agent (respectively the reporting party) to provide a status advice on a previously sent currency control message.</p> <p>Usage:</p> <p>The message may be sent in response to requests on the registration of the currency control contract, supporting document or on the payment regulatory information notification.</p>

## 2 **auth.018.001.03** **ContractRegistrationRequestV03**

### 2.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

The ContractRegistrationRequest message is sent by the reporting party to the registration agent to initiate the registration of a new contract subject to currency control.

#### Outline

The ContractRegistrationRequestV03 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.

B. ContractRegistration

Identifies the currency control contract details for which the registration is requested.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 2.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <CtrctRegnReq>	[1..1]			
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			9
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		9
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		9
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		9
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[1..1]	±		10
	<b>ForwardingAgent</b> <FwdgAgt>	[0..1]	±		10
	<b>ContractRegistration</b> <CtrctRegn>	[1..*]			10
	<b>ContractRegistrationIdentification</b> <CtrctRegnId>	[1..1]	Text		11
	<b>ReportingParty</b> <RptgPty>	[1..1]	±		11
	<b>RegistrationAgent</b> <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		12
	<b>ContractRegistrationOpening</b> <CtrctRegnOpng>	[1..*]			12
	<b>ContractRegistrationOpeningIdentification</b> <CtrctRegnOpngId>	[1..1]	Text		13
	<b>Priority</b> <Prty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		13
	<b>Contract</b> <Ctrct>	[1..1]	±		13
	<b>ContractBalance</b> <CtrctBal>	[0..*]			15
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			15
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		15
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		15
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	15
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		16
	<b>PaymentScheduleType</b> <PmtSchdlTp>	[0..1]			16
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		16
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		17
	<b>PreviousRegistrationIdentification</b> <PrvsRegnId>	[0..*]	±		17
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		17
	<b>Attachment</b> <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		17
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	18
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	18

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	19

## 2.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 AmountOrShareRule

Amount must be present or Share must be present.

### C4 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C5 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C6 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### C7 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### C8 IBAN

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

### C9 InterestSchedulePresenceRule

At least on element must be present in the InterestPaymentSchedule.

### C10 OnlyReferenceElement

The XML Signature namespace ("http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#") allows for different XML elements to be root elements. This means the user has to choose amongst these global elements which one to use as the root element. Only the XML element Reference is allowed.

**C11 PaymentScheduleItemRule**

At least on element must be present in PaymentSchedule.

**C12 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 2.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 2.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following **CurrencyControlHeader4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		9
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		9
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		9
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[1..1]	±		10
	<b>ForwardingAgent</b> <FwdgAgt>	[0..1]	±		10

#### 2.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the next party in the chain to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 2.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 256

#### 2.4.1.3 NumberOfItems <NbOfItms>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual items contained in the message.

*Datatype:* "Max15NumericText" on page 261

### 2.4.1.4 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that initiates the instruction.

**InitiatingParty <InitgPty>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 173 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		175
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	175
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		176

### 2.4.1.5 ForwardingAgent <FwdgAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent which forwards the message.

**ForwardingAgent <FwdgAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

## 2.4.2 ContractRegistration <CtrctRegn>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Identifies the currency control contract details for which the registration is requested.

**ContractRegistration <CtrctRegn>** contains the following **ContractRegistration5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>ContractRegistrationIdentification</b> <CtrctRegnId>	[1..1]	Text		11
	<b>ReportingParty</b> <RptgPty>	[1..1]	±		11
	<b>RegistrationAgent</b> <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		12
	<b>ContractRegistrationOpening</b> <CtrctRegnOpng>	[1..*]			12
	<b>ContractRegistrationOpeningIdentification</b> <CtrctRegnOpngId>	[1..1]	Text		13
	<b>Priority</b> <Prty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		13
	<b>Contract</b> <Ctrct>	[1..1]	±		13
	<b>ContractBalance</b> <CtrctBal>	[0..*]			15
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			15
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		15
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		15
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	15
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		16
	<b>PaymentScheduleType</b> <PmtSchdlTp>	[0..1]			16
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		16
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		17
	<b>PreviousRegistrationIdentification</b> <PrvsRegnId>	[0..*]	±		17
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		17
	<b>Attachment</b> <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		17
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	18
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	18

#### 2.4.2.1 ContractRegistrationIdentification <CtrctRegnId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the contract registration.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 2.4.2.2 ReportingParty <RptgPty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party registering the currency control contract.

**ReportingParty <RptgPty>** contains the following elements (see "[TradeParty5](#)" on page 176 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PartyIdentification <PtyId>	[1..1]	±		177
	LegalOrganisation <LglOrg>	[0..1]	±		177
	TaxParty <TaxPty>	[0..*]	±		177

### 2.4.2.3 RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Agent which registers the currency control contract.

**RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

### 2.4.2.4 ContractRegistrationOpening <CtrctRegnOpng>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Details about the opening of the contract registration.

**ContractRegistrationOpening <CtrctRegnOpng>** contains the following **ContractRegistration6** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>ContractRegistrationOpeningIdentification</b> <CtrctRegnOpngId>	[1..1]	Text		13
	<b>Priority</b> <Prty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		13
	<b>Contract</b> <Ctrct>	[1..1]	±		13
	<b>ContractBalance</b> <CtrctBal>	[0..*]			15
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			15
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		15
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		15
	<b>Amount</b> <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	15
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator</b> <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		16
	<b>PaymentScheduleType</b> <PmtSchdlTp>	[0..1]			16
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		16
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		17
	<b>PreviousRegistrationIdentification</b> <PrvsRegnId>	[0..*]	±		17
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		17
	<b>Attachment</b> <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		17
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	18

#### 2.4.2.4.1 ContractRegistrationOpeningIdentification <CtrctRegnOpngId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the registered contract opening.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 2.4.2.4.2 Priority <Prty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Priority requested for the opening of the registered contract.

*Datatype:* "Priority2Code" on page 252

CodeName	Name	Definition
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.

#### 2.4.2.4.3 Contract <Ctrct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Details of the contract being registered.

**Contract <Ctrct>** contains one of the following elements (see "[UnderlyingContract3Choice](#)" on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Loan <Ln>	[1..1]	±		114
Or}	Trade <Trad>	[1..1]			117
	ContractDocumentIdentification <CtrctDocId>	[0..1]	±		118
	TradeTypeIdentification <TradTpId>	[0..1]	Text		119
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	119
	Buyer <Buyr>	[1..*]	±		119
	Seller <Sellr>	[1..*]	±		119
	MaturityDate <MtrtyDt>	[0..1]	Date		120
	ProlongationFlag <PrlngrtnFlg>	[0..1]	Indicator		120
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		120
	SettlementCurrency <SttlmCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	120
	ExchangeRateInformation <XchgRateInf>	[0..1]			120
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	121
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[0..1]	Rate		121
	RateType <RateTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		121
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		121
	PaymentSchedule <PmtSchdl>	[0..1]			122
	InterestScheduleIdentification <IntrstSchdlId>	[0..1]	Text		122
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[0..1]	Date		122
	DueDate <DueDt>	[0..1]	Date		122
	ShipmentSchedule <ShpmtSchdl>	[0..1]			122
{Or	ShipmentDateRange <ShpmtDtRg>	[1..1]			123
	EarliestShipmentDate <EarlstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		123
	LatestShipmentDate <LatstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		123
Or}	ShipmentSubSchedule <ShpmtSubSchdl>	[2..*]			123
	SubQuantityValue <SubQtyVal>	[1..1]	Quantity		124
	EarliestShipmentDate <EarlstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		124
	LatestShipmentDate <LatstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		124
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		124

**2.4.2.4.4 ContractBalance <CtrctBal>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Contract balance on date of contract registration.

**ContractBalance <CtrctBal>** contains the following **ContractBalance1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]			15
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		15
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		15
	<b>Amount &lt;Amt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	15
	<b>CreditDebitIndicator &lt;CdtDbtInd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		16

**2.4.2.4.4.1 Type <Tp>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the contract balance.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **ContractBalanceType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		15
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		15

**2.4.2.4.4.1.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the nature of a balance, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalContractBalanceType1Code" on page 248

**2.4.2.4.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the nature of a balance, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**2.4.2.4.4.2 Amount <Amt>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Currency and amount of money of the contract balance.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 242

**Constraints**

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**2.4.2.4.4.3 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the balance is a credit or a debit balance. A zero balance is considered to be a credit balance.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebit3Code" on page 246

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

**2.4.2.4.4.5 PaymentScheduleType <PmtSchdITp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of the payment schedule provided in the contract.

**PaymentScheduleType <PmtSchdITp>** contains one of the following **PaymentScheduleType2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		16
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		17

**2.4.2.4.5.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Payment schedule type defined in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "PaymentScheduleType2Code" on page 251

CodeName	Name	Definition
CNTR	Contract	Payment schedule is defined as per contract.
ESTM	Estimated	Payment schedule is estimated.
BOTH	Both	Contract Payment schedule is both defined as per Contract and estimated.

**2.4.2.4.5.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Payment schedule type defined in a proprietary format.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**2.4.2.4.6 PreviousRegistrationIdentification <PrvsRegnId>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a previous contract registration.

**PreviousRegistrationIdentification <PrvsRegnId>** contains the following elements (see "DocumentIdentification22" on page 165 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		165
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIssse>	[0..1]	Date		165

**2.4.2.4.7 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details on the registered contract opening.

*Datatype:* "Max1025Text" on page 260

**2.4.2.4.8 Attachment <Attchmnt>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Documents provided as attachments to the contract registration request.

**Attachment <Attchmnt>** contains the following elements (see "[DocumentGeneralInformation5](#)" on page 125 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DocumentType <DocTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		126
	DocumentNumber <DocNb>	[1..1]	Text		126
	DocumentName <DocNm>	[0..1]	Text		126
	SenderReceiverSequenceIdentification <SndrRcvrSeqId>	[0..1]	Text		126
	IssueDate <IsseDt>	[0..1]	Date		126
	URL <URL>	[0..1]	Text		126
	LinkFileHash <LkFileHash>	[0..1]	(External Schema)		126
	AttachedBinaryFile <AttchdBinryFile>	[1..1]			127
	MIMEType <MIMETp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	EncodingType <NcodgTp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	CharacterSet <CharSet>	[0..1]	Text		127
	IncludedBinaryObject <InclBinryObjct>	[0..1]	Binary		127

#### 2.4.2.4.9 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

#### 2.4.2.5 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 2.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 3 auth.019.001.03 ContractRegistrationConfirmationV03

### 3.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

The ContractRegistrationConfirmation message is sent by the registration agent to the reporting party to register the contract subject to currency control.

#### Outline

The ContractRegistrationConfirmationV03 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

- A. GroupHeader  
Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.
- B. RegisteredContract  
Identifies the contract details which is registered for currency control.
- C. SupplementaryData  
Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

### 3.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <CtrctRegnConf>	[1..1]			
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			22
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		22
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		22
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		22
	<b>ReceivingParty</b> <RcvgPty>	[1..1]	±		22
	<b>RegistrationAgent</b> <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		23
	<b>RegisteredContract</b> <RegdCtrct>	[1..*]	±		23
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	24

### 3.3 Constraints

#### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**C3 AmountOrShareRule**

Amount must be present or Share must be present.

**C4 AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C5 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C6 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C7 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C8 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C9 InterestSchedulePresenceRule**

At least on element must be present in the InterestPaymentSchedule.

**C10 OnlyReferenceElement**

The XML Signature namespace ("http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#") allows for different XML elements to be root elements. This means the user has to choose amongst these global elements which one to use as the root element. Only the XML element Reference is allowed.

**C11 PaymentScheduleItemRule**

At least on element must be present in PaymentSchedule.

**C12 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 3.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 3.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following **CurrencyControlHeader6** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		22
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		22
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		22
	<b>ReceivingParty</b> <RcvgPty>	[1..1]	±		22
	<b>RegistrationAgent</b> <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		23

#### 3.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the next party in the chain to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 3.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 256

#### 3.4.1.3 NumberOfItems <NbOfItms>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual items contained in the message.

*Datatype:* "Max15NumericText" on page 261

#### 3.4.1.4 ReceivingParty <RcvgPty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that receives the message.

**ReceivingParty <RcvgPty>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 173 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		175
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	175
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		176

### 3.4.1.5 RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Agent which sends the message.

**RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

### 3.4.2 RegisteredContract <RegdCtrct>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Identifies the contract details which is registered for currency control.

**RegisteredContract <RegdCtrct>** contains the following elements (see "RegisteredContract11" on page 229 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalContractRegistrationRequest <OrgnCtrctRegnReq>	[0..1]	Text		230
	ReportingParty <RptgPty>	[1..1]	±		231
	RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		231
	IssuerFinancialInstitution <IssrFI>	[1..1]	±		231
	Contract <Ctrct>	[1..1]	±		231
	ContractBalance <CtrctBal>	[0..*]			233
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			233
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		233
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		233
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	233
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		234
	PaymentScheduleType <PmtSchdlTp>	[0..1]			234
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		234
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		235
	RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>	[1..1]	±		235
	PreviousRegisteredContractIdentification <PrvsRegdCtrctId>	[0..1]	±		235
	RegisteredContractJournal <RegdCtrctJrnl>	[0..*]	±		235
	Amendment <Amdmnt>	[0..*]	±		236
	Submission <Submissn>	[1..1]	±		236
	Delivery <Dlvry>	[1..1]	±		236
	LoanPrincipalAmount <LnPrncplAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	237
	EstimatedDateIndicator <EstmtdDtInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		237
	InterCompanyLoan <IntrCpnyLn>	[1..1]	Indicator		237
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		238
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C7	238

### 3.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

Impacted by: C12 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 4 auth.020.001.03 ContractRegistrationClosureRequestV03

### 4.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

The ContractRegistrationClosureRequest message is sent by the reporting party to the registration agent to close the registered contract subject to currency control.

Outline

The ContractRegistrationClosureRequestV03 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

- A. GroupHeader  
Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.
- B. RegisteredContractClosure  
Details on the closure of the registered contract.
- C. SupplementaryData  
Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

### 4.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <CtrctRegnClsrReq>	[1..1]			
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			27
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		27
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		28
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		28
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[1..1]	±		28
	<b>ForwardingAgent</b> <FwdgAgt>	[0..1]	±		28
	<b>RegisteredContractClosure</b> <RegdCtrctClsr>	[1..*]	±		28
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C5	29

### 4.3 Constraints

#### C1 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C2 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C3 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C4 OnlyReferenceElement**

The XML Signature namespace ("http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#") allows for different XML elements to be root elements. This means the user has to choose amongst these global elements which one to use as the root element. Only the XML element Reference is allowed.

**C5 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 4.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 4.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following **CurrencyControlHeader4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		27
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		28
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		28
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[1..1]	±		28
	<b>ForwardingAgent</b> <FwdgAgt>	[0..1]	±		28

#### 4.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the next party in the chain to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**4.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime" on page 256](#)**4.4.1.3 NumberOfItems <NbOfItms>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Number of individual items contained in the message.*Datatype:* ["Max15NumericText" on page 261](#)**4.4.1.4 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Party that initiates the instruction.**InitiatingParty <InitgPty>** contains the following elements (see ["PartyIdentification135" on page 173](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		175
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	175
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		176

**4.4.1.5 ForwardingAgent <FwdgAgt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Agent which forwards the message.**ForwardingAgent <FwdgAgt>** contains the following elements (see ["BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 161](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

**4.4.2 RegisteredContractClosure <RegdCtrctClsr>***Presence:* [1..\*]*Definition:* Details on the closure of the registered contract.

**RegisteredContractClosure <RegdCtrctClsr>** contains the following elements (see "RegisteredContract15" on page 207 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	RegisteredContractClosureIdentification <RegdCtrctClsrId>	[1..1]	Text		208
	ReportingParty <RptgPty>	[1..1]	±		208
	RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		208
	OriginalRegisteredContract <OrgnlRegdCtrct>	[1..1]	±		209
	Priority <Prty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		209
	ClosureReason <ClsrRsn>	[1..1]			209
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		209
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		210
	Cession <Csn>	[0..1]			210
	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		210
	DocumentNumber <DocNb>	[0..1]	Text		210
	DocumentDate <DocDt>	[0..1]	Date		210
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		210
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C7	211

### 4.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C5 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 5 auth.021.001.03 ContractRegistrationAmendmentRequestV03

## 5.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

The ContractRegistrationAmendmentRequest message is sent by the reporting party to the registration agent to amend the registered contract subject to currency control.

Outline

The ContractRegistrationAmendmentRequestV03 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

- A. GroupHeader  
Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.
- B. ContractRegistrationAmendment  
Details on the amendment of the registered contract.
- C. SupplementaryData  
Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 5.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <CtrctRegnAmdmntReq>	[1..1]			
	GroupHeader <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			32
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		32
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		32
	NumberOfItems <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		32
	InitiatingParty <InitgPty>	[1..1]	±		32
	ForwardingAgent <FwdgAgt>	[0..1]	±		33
	ContractRegistrationAmendment <CtrctRegnAmdmnt>	[1..*]	±		33
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	33

## 5.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**C3 AmountOrShareRule**

Amount must be present or Share must be present.

**C4 AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C5 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C6 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C7 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C8 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C9 InterestSchedulePresenceRule**

At least on element must be present in the InterestPaymentSchedule.

**C10 OnlyReferenceElement**

The XML Signature namespace ("http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#") allows for different XML elements to be root elements. This means the user has to choose amongst these global elements which one to use as the root element. Only the XML element Reference is allowed.

**C11 PaymentScheduleItemRule**

At least on element must be present in PaymentSchedule.

**C12 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 5.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

## 5.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following **CurrencyControlHeader4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		32
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		32
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		32
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[1..1]	±		32
	<b>ForwardingAgent</b> <FwdgAgt>	[0..1]	±		33

### 5.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the next party in the chain to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

### 5.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 256

### 5.4.1.3 NumberOfItems <NbOfItms>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual items contained in the message.

*Datatype:* "Max15NumericText" on page 261

### 5.4.1.4 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that initiates the instruction.

**InitiatingParty <InitgPty>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 173 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		175
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	175
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		176

#### 5.4.1.5 ForwardingAgent <FwdgAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent which forwards the message.

**ForwardingAgent <FwdgAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

## 5.4.2 ContractRegistrationAmendment <CtrctRegnAmdmnt>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Details on the amendment of the registered contract.

**ContractRegistrationAmendment <CtrctRegnAmdmnt>** contains the following elements (see "[RegisteredContract13](#)" on page 218 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ContractRegistrationAmendmentIdentification <CtrctRegnAmdmntId>	[1..1]	Text		218
	ReportingParty <RptgPty>	[1..1]	±		218
	RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		219
	RegisteredContractAmendment <RegdCtrctAmdmnt>	[1..*]	±		219
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C7	219

### 5.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

Impacted by: C12 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 6 **auth.022.001.03**

## **ContractRegistrationStatementV03**

### 6.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

The ContractRegistrationStatement message is sent by the registration agent to the reporting party, in response to a request or at a pre-agreed date, to send a statement of the operations related to the registered contract subject to currency control.

#### Outline

The ContractRegistrationStatementV03 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.

B. Statement

Provides the contract registration statement, which includes all journals on the activities related to the contract.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 6.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <CtrctRegnStmnt>	[1..1]			
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			38
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		38
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		38
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		39
	<b>ReceivingParty</b> <RcvgPty>	[1..1]	±		39
	<b>RegistrationAgent</b> <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		39
	<b>Statement</b> <Stmnt>	[1..*]			39
	<b>StatementIdentification</b> <StmntId>	[0..1]	Text		40
	<b>ReportingParty</b> <RptgPty>	[1..1]	±		40
	<b>RegistrationAgent</b> <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		41
	<b>ReportingPeriod</b> <RptgPrd>	[1..1]	±		41
	<b>RegisteredContract</b> <RegdCtrct>	[1..1]	±		41
	<b>TransactionJournal</b> <TxJrnl>	[0..*]			42
	<b>TransactionIdentification</b> <TxId>	[1..1]	Text		43
	<b>Certificate</b> <Cert>	[1..1]	±		43
	<b>Account</b> <Acct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	43
	<b>BankAccountDomiciliationCountry</b> <BkAcctDmcltnCtry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	44
	<b>Amendment</b> <Amdmnt>	[0..1]			44
	<b>CorrectionIdentification</b> <CrrctnId>	[1..1]	Quantity		45
	<b>OriginalDocumentIdentification</b> <OrgnlDocId>	[0..1]	Text		45
	<b>CertificateRecord</b> <CertRcrd>	[1..*]	±		45
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C14	46
	<b>SupportingDocumentJournal</b> <SpprtngDocJrnl>	[0..*]	±		47
	<b>AdditionalSupportingDocumentJournal</b> <AddtlSpprtngDocJrnl>	[0..*]	±		49
	<b>RegulatoryRuleValidation</b> <RgltryRuleVldtn>	[0..*]	±		51
	<b>TotalContractTurnoverSum</b> <TtlCtrctTrnvrSum>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	51
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C14	51
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C14	52

## 6.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 AmountOrShareRule

Amount must be present or Share must be present.

### C4 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C5 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C6 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### C7 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### C8 IBAN

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

### C9 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

### C10 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

### C11 InterestSchedulePresenceRule

At least one element must be present in the InterestPaymentSchedule.

**C12 OnlyReferenceElement**

The XML Signature namespace ("http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#") allows for different XML elements to be root elements. This means the user has to choose amongst these global elements which one to use as the root element. Only the XML element Reference is allowed.

**C13 PaymentScheduleItemRule**

At least one element must be present in PaymentSchedule.

**C14 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

**C15 TransactionAmountInContractCurrencyPresenceRule**

If ContractReference/RegisteredContractIdentification is absent then TransactionAmountInContractCurrency must be absent.

## 6.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 6.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following **CurrencyControlHeader6** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		38
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		38
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		39
	<b>ReceivingParty</b> <RcvgPty>	[1..1]	±		39
	<b>RegistrationAgent</b> <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		39

#### 6.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the next party in the chain to unambiguously identify the message.

Usage: The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 6.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 256

### 6.4.1.3 NumberOfItems <NbOfItms>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual items contained in the message.

*Datatype:* "Max15NumericText" on page 261

### 6.4.1.4 ReceivingParty <RcvgPty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that receives the message.

**ReceivingParty <RcvgPty>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 173 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		175
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	175
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		176

### 6.4.1.5 RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Agent which sends the message.

**RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

## 6.4.2 Statement <Stmt>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Provides the contract registration statement, which includes all journals on the activities related to the contract.

**Statement <Stmnt>** contains the following **ContractRegistrationStatement3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>StatementIdentification</b> <StmntId>	[0..1]	Text		40
	<b>ReportingParty</b> <RptgPty>	[1..1]	±		40
	<b>RegistrationAgent</b> <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		41
	<b>ReportingPeriod</b> <RptgPrd>	[1..1]	±		41
	<b>RegisteredContract</b> <RegdCtrct>	[1..1]	±		41
	<b>TransactionJournal</b> <TxJrnl>	[0..*]			42
	<b>TransactionIdentification</b> <TxId>	[1..1]	Text		43
	<b>Certificate</b> <Cert>	[1..1]	±		43
	<b>Account</b> <Acct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	43
	<b>BankAccountDomiciliationCountry</b> <BkAcctDmcltnCtry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	44
	<b>Amendment</b> <Amdmnt>	[0..1]			44
	<b>CorrectionIdentification</b> <CrrctnId>	[1..1]	Quantity		45
	<b>OriginalDocumentIdentification</b> <OrgnlDocId>	[0..1]	Text		45
	<b>CertificateRecord</b> <CertRcrd>	[1..*]	±		45
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C14	46
	<b>SupportingDocumentJournal</b> <SpprtngDocJrnl>	[0..*]	±		47
	<b>AdditionalSupportingDocumentJournal</b> <AddtlSpprtngDocJrnl>	[0..*]	±		49
	<b>RegulatoryRuleValidation</b> <RgltryRuleVldtn>	[0..*]	±		51
	<b>TotalContractTurnoverSum</b> <TtlCtrctTrnvrSum>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	51
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C14	51

#### 6.4.2.1 StatementIdentification <StmntId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the account servicer, to unambiguously identify the contract registration statement.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 6.4.2.2 ReportingParty <RptgPty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party registering the currency control contract.

**ReportingParty <RptgPty>** contains the following elements (see "[TradeParty5](#)" on page 176 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PartyIdentification <PtyId>	[1..1]	±		177
	LegalOrganisation <LglOrg>	[0..1]	±		177
	TaxParty <TaxPty>	[0..*]	±		177

### 6.4.2.3 RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Agent which registers the currency control contract.

**RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

### 6.4.2.4 ReportingPeriod <RptgPrd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the period for which the statement is provided.

**ReportingPeriod <RptgPrd>** contains the following elements (see "[ReportingPeriod4](#)" on page 111 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[1..1]			112
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		112
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		112
	FromToTime <FrToTm>	[1..1]	±		112
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112

### 6.4.2.5 RegisteredContract <RegdCtrct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Registered currency control contract.

**RegisteredContract <RegdCtrct>** contains the following elements (see "[RegisteredContract12](#)" on page 220 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalContractRegistrationRequest <OrgnCtrctRegnReq>	[0..1]	Text		221
	IssuerFinancialInstitution <IssrFI>	[1..1]	±		221
	Contract <Ctrct>	[1..1]	±		222
	ContractBalance <CtrctBal>	[0..*]			224
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			224
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		224
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		224
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	224
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		225
	PaymentScheduleType <PmtSchdlTp>	[0..1]			225
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		225
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		226
	RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>	[1..1]	±		226
	PreviousRegisteredContractIdentification <PrvsRegdCtrctId>	[0..1]	±		226
	RegisteredContractJournal <RegdCtrctJrnl>	[0..*]	±		226
	Amendment <Amdmnt>	[0..*]	±		227
	Submission <Submissn>	[1..1]	±		227
	Delivery <Dlvry>	[1..1]	±		227
	LoanPrincipalAmount <LnPrncplAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	228
	EstimatedDateIndicator <EstmtdDtInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		228
	InterCompanyLoan <IntrCpnyLn>	[1..1]	Indicator		228
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		229

#### 6.4.2.6 TransactionJournal <TxJrnl>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Journal of the transactions recorded under the registered currency control contract.

**TransactionJournal <TxJrnl>** contains the following **TransactionCertificate4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>TransactionIdentification</b> <TxId>	[1..1]	Text		43
	<b>Certificate</b> <Cert>	[1..1]	±		43
	<b>Account</b> <Acct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	43
	<b>BankAccountDomiciliationCountry</b> <BkAcctDmcltnCtry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	44
	<b>Amendment</b> <Amdmnt>	[0..1]			44
	<b>CorrectionIdentification</b> <CrrctnId>	[1..1]	Quantity		45
	<b>OriginalDocumentIdentification</b> <OrgnlDocId>	[0..1]	Text		45
	<b>CertificateRecord</b> <CertRcrd>	[1..*]	±		45
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C14	46

#### 6.4.2.6.1 TransactionIdentification <TxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the transaction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 6.4.2.6.2 Certificate <Cert>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference of the transaction certificate.

**Certificate <Cert>** contains the following elements (see "[DocumentIdentification28](#)" on page 164 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		164
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIsse>	[1..1]	Date		165

#### 6.4.2.6.3 Account <Acct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Cash account, linked to the registered contract, on which the cash entry is made.

*Impacted by:* [C10 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule"](#), [C9 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"](#)

**Account <Acct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 102 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		103
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		103
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	103
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		104
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		104

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
And    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 6.4.2.6.4 BankAccountDomiciliationCountry <BkAcctDmcltnCtry>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Country in which the bank account is located, when the bank which services the account is located in another country.

*Impacted by:* C6 "Country"

*Datatype:* ["CountryCode"](#) on page 246

#### Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

#### 6.4.2.6.5 Amendment <Amdmnt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amendment indicator details.

**Amendment <Amdmnt>** contains the following **DocumentAmendment1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>CorrectionIdentification</b> <CrrctnId>	[1..1]	Quantity		45
	<b>OriginalDocumentIdentification</b> <OrgnlDocId>	[0..1]	Text		45

**6.4.2.6.5.1 CorrectionIdentification <CrrctnId>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the correction sequence number used to identify the amendment.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 259

**6.4.2.6.5.2 OriginalDocumentIdentification <OrgnIDocId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the original document being amended.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**6.4.2.6.6 CertificateRecord <CertRcrd>**

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Record of the transaction certificate.

**CertificateRecord <CertRcrd>** contains the following elements (see "[TransactionCertificateRecord2](#)" on page 200 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CertificateRecordIdentification <CertRcrdId>	[1..1]	Text		201
	DocumentSubmittingProcedure <DocSubmitgPrcdr>	[0..1]	Text		201
	Transaction <Tx>	[1..1]			201
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[1..1]			202
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]			203
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		203
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		203
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfld>	[0..1]	Text		203
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		203
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		204
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			204
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		204
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		204
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		204
	TransactionDate <TxDt>	[1..1]	Date		204
	TransactionType <TxTp>	[0..1]	Text		204
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[1..1]	Text		205
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	205
	Contract <Ctrct>	[0..1]	±	C12	205
	Attachment <Atchmnt>	[0..*]	±		206

#### 6.4.2.6.7 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C14 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

**Constraints**

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

**6.4.2.7 SupportingDocumentJournal <SpptgDocJrnl>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Journal of the supporting documents recorded under the registered currency control contract.

**SupportingDocumentJournal <SpprtgDocJrnl>** contains the following elements (see "SupportingDocument3" on page 146 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SupportingDocumentIdentification <SpprtgDocId>	[1..1]	Text		148
	OriginalRequestIdentification <OrgnlReqlId>	[0..1]	Text		148
	Certificate <Cert>	[1..1]	±		148
	AccountOwner <AcctOwnr>	[1..1]	±		148
	AccountServicer <AcctSvcr>	[1..1]	±		148
	Amendment <Amdmnt>	[0..1]			149
	CorrectionIdentification <CrrctnId>	[1..1]	Quantity		149
	OriginalDocumentIdentification <OrgnlDocId>	[0..1]	Text		149
	ContractReference <CtrctRef>	[1..1]			149
{Or	RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>	[1..1]	Text		149
Or}	Contract <Ctrct>	[1..1]	±		150
	Entry <Ntry>	[1..*]			150
	EntryIdentification <NtryId>	[1..1]	Text		151
	OriginalDocument <OrgnlDoc>	[1..1]	±		151
	DocumentType <DocTp>	[1..1]	Text		152
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	152
	TotalAmountAfterShipment <TtlAmtAfrShpmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	152
	TotalAmountInContractCurrency <TtlAmtInCtrctCcy>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	153
	TotalAmountAfterShipmentInContractCurrency <TtlAmtAfrShpmtInCtrctCcy>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	153
	ShipmentAttributes <ShpmtAttrbts>	[1..1]			153
	Conditions <Conds>	[0..1]			154
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		154
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[0..1]	Date		154
	CountryOfCounterParty <CtryOfCntrPty>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	154
	EntryAmendmentIdentification <NtryAmdmntId>	[0..1]			155
	CorrectingEntryNumber <CrrctgNtryNb>	[1..1]	Quantity		155
	OriginalDocument <OrgnlDoc>	[1..1]	±		155
	MaturityData <MtrtyData>	[0..1]	Text		155
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		155

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		155
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C7	156

#### 6.4.2.8 AdditionalSupportingDocumentJournal <AddtlSpprtngDocJrnl>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Journal of additional supporting documents recorded under the registered currency control contract.

**AdditionalSupportingDocumentJournal <AddtlSpprtGDocJrn>** contains the following elements (see "SupportingDocument3" on page 146 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SupportingDocumentIdentification <SpprtGDocId>	[1..1]	Text		148
	OriginalRequestIdentification <OrgnlReqlId>	[0..1]	Text		148
	Certificate <Cert>	[1..1]	±		148
	AccountOwner <AcctOwnr>	[1..1]	±		148
	AccountServicer <AcctSvcr>	[1..1]	±		148
	Amendment <Amdmnt>	[0..1]			149
	CorrectionIdentification <CrrctnId>	[1..1]	Quantity		149
	OriginalDocumentIdentification <OrgnlDocId>	[0..1]	Text		149
	ContractReference <CtrctRef>	[1..1]			149
{Or	RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>	[1..1]	Text		149
Or}	Contract <Ctrct>	[1..1]	±		150
	Entry <Ntry>	[1..*]			150
	EntryIdentification <NtryId>	[1..1]	Text		151
	OriginalDocument <OrgnlDoc>	[1..1]	±		151
	DocumentType <DocTp>	[1..1]	Text		152
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	152
	TotalAmountAfterShipment <TtlAmtAfrShpmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	152
	TotalAmountInContractCurrency <TtlAmtInCtrctCcy>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	153
	TotalAmountAfterShipmentInContractCurrency <TtlAmtAfrShpmtInCtrctCcy>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	153
	ShipmentAttributes <ShpmtAttrbts>	[1..1]			153
	Conditions <Conds>	[0..1]			154
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		154
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[0..1]	Date		154
	CountryOfCounterParty <CtryOfCntrPty>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	154
	EntryAmendmentIdentification <NtryAmdmntId>	[0..1]			155
	CorrectingEntryNumber <CrrctgNtryNb>	[1..1]	Quantity		155
	OriginalDocument <OrgnlDoc>	[1..1]	±		155
	MaturityData <MtrtyData>	[0..1]	Text		155
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		155

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		155
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C7	156

#### 6.4.2.9 RegulatoryRuleValidation <RgltryRuleVldtn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Details on the currency control rule against which has been violated.

**RegulatoryRuleValidation <RgltryRuleVldtn>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericValidationRuleIdentification1](#)" on page 169 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		170
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		170
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	±		170
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		170

#### 6.4.2.10 TotalContractTurnoverSum <TtlCtrctTrnvrSum>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Total turn over amount recorded under the currency control contract for the amount of all.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C7 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 242

##### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.4.2.11 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C14 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

### 6.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C14 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 7 **auth.023.001.03**

## **ContractRegistrationStatementRequestV03**

### 7.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

The ContractRegistrationStatementRequest message is sent by the reporting party to the registration agent to request for a statement of the operations related to the registered contract subject to currency control.

#### Outline

The ContractRegistrationStatementRequestV03 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

- A. GroupHeader  
Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.
- B. StatementRequest  
Details on the information requested for the contract registration statement.
- C. SupplementaryData  
Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 7.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <CtrctRegnStmntReq>	[1..1]			
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			55
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		55
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		55
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		55
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[1..1]	±		56
	<b>ForwardingAgent</b> <FwdgAgt>	[0..1]	±		56
	<b>StatementRequest</b> <StmntReq>	[1..*]			56
	<b>StatementRequestIdentification</b> <StmntReqId>	[1..1]	Text		57
	<b>ReportingPeriod</b> <RptgPrd>	[1..1]	±		57
	<b>ReportingParty</b> <RptgPty>	[1..1]	±		57
	<b>RegistrationAgent</b> <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		58
	<b>RegisteredContractIdentification</b> <RegdCtrctId>	[1..1]	Text		58
	<b>ReturnCriteria</b> <RtrCrit>	[0..1]			58
	<b>TransactionJournal</b> <TxJrnl>	[0..1]	Indicator		58
	<b>SupportingDocumentJournal</b> <SpprtgDocJrnl>	[0..1]	Indicator		59
	<b>AdditionalSupportingDocumentJournal</b> <AddtlSpprtgDocJrnl>	[0..1]	Indicator		59
	<b>RegulatoryRuleValidation</b> <RgltryRuleVldtn>	[0..1]	Indicator		59
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C4	59
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C4	60

## 7.3 Constraints

### C1 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C2 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C3 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C4 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 7.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 7.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following **CurrencyControlHeader4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		55
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		55
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		55
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[1..1]	±		56
	<b>ForwardingAgent</b> <FwdgAgt>	[0..1]	±		56

#### 7.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the next party in the chain to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 7.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 256

#### 7.4.1.3 NumberOfItems <NbOfItms>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual items contained in the message.

*Datatype:* "Max15NumericText" on page 261

#### 7.4.1.4 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that initiates the instruction.

**InitiatingParty <InitgPty>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 173 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		175
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	175
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		176

#### 7.4.1.5 ForwardingAgent <FwdgAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent which forwards the message.

**ForwardingAgent <FwdgAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

### 7.4.2 StatementRequest <StmntReq>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Details on the information requested for the contract registration statement.

**StatementRequest <StmReq>** contains the following **ContractRegistrationStatementRequest2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>StatementRequestIdentification</b> <StmReqId>	[1..1]	Text		57
	<b>ReportingPeriod</b> <RptgPrd>	[1..1]	±		57
	<b>ReportingParty</b> <RptgPty>	[1..1]	±		57
	<b>RegistrationAgent</b> <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		58
	<b>RegisteredContractIdentification</b> <RegdCtrctId>	[1..1]	Text		58
	<b>ReturnCriteria</b> <RtrCrit>	[0..1]			58
	<b>TransactionJournal</b> <TxJrnl>	[0..1]	Indicator		58
	<b>SupportingDocumentJournal</b> <SpprtgDocJrnl>	[0..1]	Indicator		59
	<b>AdditionalSupportingDocumentJournal</b> <AddtlSpprtgDocJrnl>	[0..1]	Indicator		59
	<b>RegulatoryRuleValidation</b> <RgltryRuleVldtn>	[0..1]	Indicator		59
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C4	59

#### 7.4.2.1 StatementRequestIdentification <StmReqId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the contract registration statement request.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 7.4.2.2 ReportingPeriod <RptgPrd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the period for which the statement is requested.

**ReportingPeriod <RptgPrd>** contains the following elements (see "ReportingPeriod4" on page 111 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]			112
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		112
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[1..1]			112
	FromToTime <FrToTm>	[1..1]	±		112
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112

#### 7.4.2.3 ReportingParty <RptgPty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party registering the currency control contract.

**ReportingParty <RptgPty>** contains the following elements (see "[TradeParty5](#)" on page 176 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PartyIdentification <PtyId>	[1..1]	±		177
	LegalOrganisation <LglOrg>	[0..1]	±		177
	TaxParty <TaxPty>	[0..*]	±		177

#### 7.4.2.4 RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Agent which registers the currency control contract.

**RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

#### 7.4.2.5 RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the requested registered contract.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 262

#### 7.4.2.6 ReturnCriteria <RtrCrit>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Defines the criteria to be returned in the statement in response to the request.

**ReturnCriteria <RtrCrit>** contains the following **ContractRegistrationStatementCriteria1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>TransactionJournal</b> <TxJrnl>	[0..1]	Indicator		58
	<b>SupportingDocumentJournal</b> <SpprtgDocJrnl>	[0..1]	Indicator		59
	<b>AdditionalSupportingDocumentJournal</b> <AddtlSpprtgDocJrnl>	[0..1]	Indicator		59
	<b>RegulatoryRuleValidation</b> <RgltryRuleVldtn>	[0..1]	Indicator		59

##### 7.4.2.6.1 TransactionJournal <TxJrnl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the journal of the transactions recorded under the registered currency control contract must be returned or not.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 258):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 7.4.2.6.2 SupportingDocumentJournal <SpprtgDocJrnl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the journal of the supporting documents recorded under the registered currency control contract must be returned or not.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 258):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 7.4.2.6.3 AdditionalSupportingDocumentJournal <AddtlSpprtgDocJrnl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the journal of additional supporting documents recorded under the registered currency control contract must be returned or not.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 258):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 7.4.2.6.4 RegulatoryRuleValidation <RgltryRuleVldtn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the details on the currency control rule against which has been violated must be returned or not.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 258):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 7.4.2.7 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C4 "[SupplementaryDataRule](#)"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

**Constraints**

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

### 7.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C4 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

**Constraints**

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 8 **auth.024.001.03**

## **PaymentRegulatoryInformationNotificationV03**

### 8.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

The PaymentRegulatoryInformationNotification message is sent by the reporting party to the registration agent to provide details on the transaction, when a payment has to be recorded against the registered currency control contract.

In some cases, the registration agent may also sent this message to the reporting party.

#### Outline

The PaymentRegulatoryInformationNotificationV03 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.

B. TransactionNotification

Notification of information related to a regulatory reporting on a payment.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 8.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <PmtRgltryInfNfctn>	[1..1]			
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			64
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		64
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		64
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		64
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[1..1]	±		64
	<b>ForwardingAgent</b> <FwdgAgt>	[0..1]	±		65
	<b>TransactionNotification</b> <TxNfctn>	[1..*]			65
	<b>TransactionNotificationIdentification</b> <TxNfctnId>	[1..1]	Text		65
	<b>AccountOwner</b> <AcctOwnr>	[1..1]	±		66
	<b>AccountServicer</b> <AcctSvcr>	[1..1]	±		66
	<b>TransactionCertificate</b> <TxCert>	[1..*]			66
	<b>TransactionIdentification</b> <TxId>	[1..1]	Text		67
	<b>Certificate</b> <Cert>	[1..1]	±		67
	<b>Account</b> <Acct>	[0..1]	±	C9, C8	67
	<b>BankAccountDomiciliationCountry</b> <BkAcctDmcltnCtry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	68
	<b>Amendment</b> <Amdmnt>	[0..1]			68
	<b>CorrectionIdentification</b> <CrrctnId>	[1..1]	Quantity		69
	<b>OriginalDocumentIdentification</b> <OrgnlDocId>	[0..1]	Text		69
	<b>CertificateRecord</b> <CertRcrd>	[1..*]	±		69
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C11	70
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C11	71

## 8.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**C3 AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C4 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C5 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C6 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C7 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C8 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C9 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C10 OnlyReferenceElement**

The XML Signature namespace ("http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#") allows for different XML elements to be root elements. This means the user has to choose amongst these global elements which one to use as the root element. Only the XML element Reference is allowed.

**C11 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

**C12 TransactionAmountInContractCurrencyPresenceRule**

If ContractReference/RegisteredContractIdentification is absent then TransactionAmountInContractCurrency must be absent.

## 8.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

## 8.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following **CurrencyControlHeader5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		64
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		64
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		64
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[1..1]	±		64
	<b>ForwardingAgent</b> <FwdgAgt>	[0..1]	±		65

### 8.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the next party in the chain to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

### 8.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 256

### 8.4.1.3 NumberOfItems <NbOfItms>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual items contained in the message.

*Datatype:* "Max15NumericText" on page 261

### 8.4.1.4 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that initiates the instruction.

**InitiatingParty <InitgPty>** contains one of the following elements (see "Party40Choice" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		179
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		179

### 8.4.1.5 ForwardingAgent <FwdgAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent which forwards the message.

**ForwardingAgent <FwdgAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

### 8.4.2 TransactionNotification <TxNtfctn>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Notification of information related to a regulatory reporting on a payment.

**TransactionNotification <TxNtfctn>** contains the following **RegulatoryReportingNotification3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>TransactionNotificationIdentification</b> <TxNtfctnId>	[1..1]	Text		65
	<b>AccountOwner</b> <AcctOwnr>	[1..1]	±		66
	<b>AccountServicer</b> <AcctSvcr>	[1..1]	±		66
	<b>TransactionCertificate</b> <TxCert>	[1..*]			66
	<b>TransactionIdentification</b> <TxId>	[1..1]	Text		67
	<b>Certificate</b> <Cert>	[1..1]	±		67
	<b>Account</b> <Acct>	[0..1]	±	C9, C8	67
	<b>BankAccountDomiciliationCountry</b> <BkAcctDmcltnCtry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	68
	<b>Amendment</b> <Amdmnt>	[0..1]			68
	<b>CorrectionIdentification</b> <CrrctnId>	[1..1]	Quantity		69
	<b>OriginalDocumentIdentification</b> <OrgnlDocId>	[0..1]	Text		69
	<b>CertificateRecord</b> <CertRcrd>	[1..*]	±		69
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C11	70

#### 8.4.2.1 TransactionNotificationIdentification <TxNtfctnId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the transaction notification.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 262

**8.4.2.2 AccountOwner <AcctOwnr>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Party that legally owns the cash account.**AccountOwner <AcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 173 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		175
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	175
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		176

**8.4.2.3 AccountServicer <AcctSvcr>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Party that manages the account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.**AccountServicer <AcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

**8.4.2.4 TransactionCertificate <TxCert>***Presence:* [1..\*]*Definition:* Certificate against which all currency control transactions are registered.

**TransactionCertificate <TxCert>** contains the following **TransactionCertificate4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>TransactionIdentification</b> <TxId>	[1..1]	Text		67
	<b>Certificate</b> <Cert>	[1..1]	±		67
	<b>Account</b> <Acct>	[0..1]	±	C9, C8	67
	<b>BankAccountDomiciliationCountry</b> <BkAcctDmcltnCtry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	68
	<b>Amendment</b> <Amdmnt>	[0..1]			68
	<b>CorrectionIdentification</b> <CrrctnId>	[1..1]	Quantity		69
	<b>OriginalDocumentIdentification</b> <OrgnlDocId>	[0..1]	Text		69
	<b>CertificateRecord</b> <CertRcrd>	[1..*]	±		69
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C11	70

#### 8.4.2.4.1 TransactionIdentification <TxId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the transaction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 8.4.2.4.2 Certificate <Cert>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference of the transaction certificate.

**Certificate <Cert>** contains the following elements (see "DocumentIdentification28" on page 164 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		164
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIsse>	[1..1]	Date		165

#### 8.4.2.4.3 Account <Acct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Cash account, linked to the registered contract, on which the cash entry is made.

*Impacted by:* C9 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C8 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**Account <Acct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 102 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		103
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		103
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	103
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		104
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		104

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
And    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 8.4.2.4.4 BankAccountDomiciliationCountry <BkAcctDmcltnCtry>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Country in which the bank account is located, when the bank which services the account is located in another country.

*Impacted by:* C5 "Country"

*Datatype:* "CountryCode" on page 246

#### Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

#### 8.4.2.4.5 Amendment <Amdmnt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amendment indicator details.

**Amendment <Amdmnt>** contains the following **DocumentAmendment1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>CorrectionIdentification</b> <CrrctnId>	[1..1]	Quantity		69
	<b>OriginalDocumentIdentification</b> <OrgnlDocId>	[0..1]	Text		69

#### **8.4.2.4.5.1 CorrectionIdentification <CrrctnId>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the correction sequence number used to identify the amendment.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 259

#### **8.4.2.4.5.2 OriginalDocumentIdentification <OrgnIDocId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the original document being amended.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### **8.4.2.4.6 CertificateRecord <CertRcrd>**

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Record of the transaction certificate.

**CertificateRecord <CertRcrd>** contains the following elements (see "[TransactionCertificateRecord2](#)" on page 200 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CertificateRecordIdentification <CertRcrdId>	[1..1]	Text		201
	DocumentSubmittingProcedure <DocSubmitgPrcdr>	[0..1]	Text		201
	Transaction <Tx>	[1..1]			201
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[1..1]			202
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]			203
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		203
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		203
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfld>	[0..1]	Text		203
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		203
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		204
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			204
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		204
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		204
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		204
	TransactionDate <TxDt>	[1..1]	Date		204
	TransactionType <TxTp>	[0..1]	Text		204
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[1..1]	Text		205
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	205
	Contract <Ctrct>	[0..1]	±	C12	205
	Attachment <Atchmnt>	[0..*]	±		206

#### 8.4.2.4.7 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C11 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

**Constraints**

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

### 8.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C11 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

**Constraints**

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 9 auth.025.001.03 CurrencyControlSupportingDocumentDeliveryV03

## 9.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

The CurrencyControlSupportingDocumentDelivery message is sent by either the reporting party (respectively the registration agent) or the registration agent (respectively the reporting party) in response to the supporting document request.

### Outline

The CurrencyControlSupportingDocumentDeliveryV03 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

- A. GroupHeader  
Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.
- B. SupportingDocument  
Details of the supporting document provided for the registered contract.
- C. SupplementaryData  
Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 9.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <CcyCtrlSpprtgDocDlvry>	[1..1]			
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			73
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		74
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		74
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		74
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[1..1]	±		74
	<b>ForwardingAgent</b> <FwdgAgt>	[0..1]	±		74
	<b>SupportingDocument</b> <SpprtgDoc>	[1..*]	±		75
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C7	77

## 9.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C3 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C4 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### C5 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### C6 OnlyReferenceElement

The XML Signature namespace ("http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#") allows for different XML elements to be root elements. This means the user has to choose amongst these global elements which one to use as the root element. Only the XML element Reference is allowed.

### C7 SupplementaryDataRule

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 9.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 9.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following **CurrencyControlHeader5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		74
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		74
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		74
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[1..1]	±		74
	<b>ForwardingAgent</b> <FwdgAgt>	[0..1]	±		74

#### 9.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the next party in the chain to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 9.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 256

#### 9.4.1.3 NumberOfItems <NbOfItms>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual items contained in the message.

*Datatype:* "Max15NumericText" on page 261

#### 9.4.1.4 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that initiates the instruction.

**InitiatingParty <InitgPty>** contains one of the following elements (see "Party40Choice" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		179
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		179

#### 9.4.1.5 ForwardingAgent <FwdgAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent which forwards the message.

**ForwardingAgent <FwdgAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

## 9.4.2 SupportingDocument <SpprtgDoc>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Details of the supporting document provided for the registered contract.

**SupportingDocument <SpprtgDoc>** contains the following elements (see "[SupportingDocument3](#)" on page 146 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SupportingDocumentIdentification <SpprtgDocId>	[1..1]	Text		148
	OriginalRequestIdentification <OrgnlReqlId>	[0..1]	Text		148
	Certificate <Cert>	[1..1]	±		148
	AccountOwner <AcctOwnr>	[1..1]	±		148
	AccountServicer <AcctSvcr>	[1..1]	±		148
	Amendment <Amdmnt>	[0..1]			149
	CorrectionIdentification <CrrctnId>	[1..1]	Quantity		149
	OriginalDocumentIdentification <OrgnlDocId>	[0..1]	Text		149
	ContractReference <CtrctRef>	[1..1]			149
{Or	RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>	[1..1]	Text		149
Or}	Contract <Ctrct>	[1..1]	±		150
	Entry <Ntry>	[1..*]			150
	EntryIdentification <NtryId>	[1..1]	Text		151
	OriginalDocument <OrgnlDoc>	[1..1]	±		151
	DocumentType <DocTp>	[1..1]	Text		152
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	152
	TotalAmountAfterShipment <TtlAmtAfrShpmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	152
	TotalAmountInContractCurrency <TtlAmtInCtrctCcy>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	153
	TotalAmountAfterShipmentInContractCurrency <TtlAmtAfrShpmtInCtrctCcy>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	153
	ShipmentAttributes <ShpmtAttrbts>	[1..1]			153
	Conditions <Conds>	[0..1]			154
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		154
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[0..1]	Date		154
	CountryOfCounterParty <CtryOfCntrPty>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	154
	EntryAmendmentIdentification <NtryAmdmntId>	[0..1]			155
	CorrectingEntryNumber <CrrctgNtryNb>	[1..1]	Quantity		155
	OriginalDocument <OrgnlDoc>	[1..1]	±		155
	MaturityData <MtrtyData>	[0..1]	Text		155
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		155

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		155
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C7	156

### 9.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C7 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 10 auth.026.001.03 CurrencyControlRequestOrLetterV03

## 10.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

The CurrencyControlRequestOrLetter message is sent by the reporting party (respectively the registration agent) to the registration agent (respectively the reporting party) to send a currency control related letter or to request for supporting documents.

### Outline

The CurrencyControlRequestOrLetterV03 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

- A. GroupHeader  
Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.
- B. RequestOrLetter  
Supporting document request or letter details.
- C. SupplementaryData  
Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 10.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <CcyCtrlReqOrLtr>	[1..1]			
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			79
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		79
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		80
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		80
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[1..1]	±		80
	<b>ForwardingAgent</b> <FwdgAgt>	[0..1]	±		80
	<b>RequestOrLetter</b> <ReqOrLtr>	[1..*]	±		80
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C5	81

## 10.3 Constraints

### C1 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C2 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C3 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C4 OnlyReferenceElement**

The XML Signature namespace ("http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#") allows for different XML elements to be root elements. This means the user has to choose amongst these global elements which one to use as the root element. Only the XML element Reference is allowed.

**C5 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 10.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 10.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following **CurrencyControlHeader5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		79
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		80
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		80
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[1..1]	±		80
	<b>ForwardingAgent</b> <FwdgAgt>	[0..1]	±		80

#### 10.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the next party in the chain to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**10.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime" on page 256](#)**10.4.1.3 NumberOfItems <NbOfItms>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Number of individual items contained in the message.*Datatype:* ["Max15NumericText" on page 261](#)**10.4.1.4 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Party that initiates the instruction.**InitiatingParty <InitgPty>** contains one of the following elements (see ["Party40Choice" on page 179](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		179
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		179

**10.4.1.5 ForwardingAgent <FwdgAgt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Agent which forwards the message.**ForwardingAgent <FwdgAgt>** contains the following elements (see ["BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 161](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

**10.4.2 RequestOrLetter <ReqOrLtr>***Presence:* [1..\*]*Definition:* Supporting document request or letter details.

**RequestOrLetter <ReqOrLtr>** contains the following elements (see ["SupportingDocumentRequestOrLetter3"](#) on page 128 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	RequestOrLetterIdentification <ReqOrLtrId>	[1..1]	Text		129
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		129
	Sender <Sndr>	[0..1]	±		129
	Receiver <Rcvr>	[0..1]	±		130
	OriginalReferences <OrgnlRefs>	[0..*]			130
	OriginalSender <OrgnlSndr>	[0..1]	±		130
	OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		131
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		131
	OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		131
	OriginalPackageIdentification <OrgnlPackgId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	OriginalRecordIdentification <OrgnlRcrdId>	[1..1]	Text		131
	Subject <Sbjt>	[1..1]	Text		131
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			131
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		132
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		132
	ResponseRequired <RspnReqrd>	[1..1]	Indicator		132
	DueDate <DueDt>	[0..1]	Date		132
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		132
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C7	133

### 10.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C5 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see ["SupplementaryData1"](#) on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

### **Constraints**

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 11 auth.027.001.03 CurrencyControlStatusAdviceV03

## 11.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

The CurrencyControlStatusAdvice message is sent by either the reporting party (respectively the registration agent) or the registration agent (respectively the reporting party) to provide a status advice on a previously sent currency control message.

### Usage:

The message may be sent in response to requests on the registration of the currency control contract, supporting document or on the payment regulatory information notification.

### Outline

The CurrencyControlStatusAdviceV03 MessageDefinition is composed of 4 MessageBuildingBlocks:

- A. GroupHeader  
Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.
- B. GroupStatus  
Provides the group status for the global message.
- C. PackageStatus  
Provides the status of the package in the message, which may contain the individual records.
- D. SupplementaryData  
Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 11.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<i>Message root &lt;Document&gt; &lt;CcyCtrlStsAdv&gt;</i>	[1..1]			
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			86
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		86
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		86
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		86
	<b>ReceivingParty</b> <RcvgPty>	[1..1]	±		86
	<b>RegistrationAgent</b> <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		87
	<b>GroupStatus</b> <GrpSts>	[1..*]			87
	<b>OriginalReferences</b> <OrgnlRefs>	[1..1]			88
	<b>OriginalSender</b> <OrgnlSndr>	[0..1]	±		88
	<b>OriginalMessageIdentification</b> <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		89
	<b>OriginalMessageNameIdentification</b> <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		89
	<b>OriginalCreationDateTime</b> <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		89
	<b>ReportingParty</b> <RptgPty>	[1..1]	±		89
	<b>RegistrationAgent</b> <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		89
	<b>ReportingPeriod</b> <RptgPrd>	[0..1]	±		90
	<b>Status</b> <Sts>	[0..1]	CodeSet		90
	<b>StatusReason</b> <StsRsn>	[0..*]		C4	91
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		91
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			92
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		92
	<b>ValidationRule</b> <VldtnRule>	[0..*]	±		92
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		93
	<b>StatusDateTime</b> <StsDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		93
	<b>PackageStatus</b> <PackgSts>	[0..*]			93
	<b>PackageIdentification</b> <PackgId>	[1..1]	Text		94
	<b>Status</b> <Sts>	[1..1]	CodeSet		94
	<b>StatusReason</b> <StsRsn>	[0..*]		C4	95
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		96

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			96
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		96
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		96
	<b>ValidationRule</b> <VldtnRule>	[0..*]	±		96
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		97
	<b>StatusDateTime</b> <StsDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		97
	<b>RecordStatus</b> <RcrdSts>	[0..*]			97
	<b>RecordIdentification</b> <RcrdId>	[1..1]	Text		98
	<b>Status</b> <Sts>	[1..1]	CodeSet		98
	<b>StatusReason</b> <StsRsn>	[0..*]		C4	99
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		99
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			100
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		100
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		100
	<b>ValidationRule</b> <VldtnRule>	[0..*]	±		100
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		101
	<b>StatusDateTime</b> <StsDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		101
	<b>DocumentIdentification</b> <DocId>	[0..1]	±		101
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C5	101

## 11.3 Constraints

### C1 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C2 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C3 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### C4 StatusReasonRule

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR (Narrative), then AdditionalInformation must be present.

**C5 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 11.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 11.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Characteristics shared by all individual items included in the message.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following **CurrencyControlHeader6** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		86
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		86
	<b>NumberOfItems</b> <NbOfItms>	[1..1]	Text		86
	<b>ReceivingParty</b> <RcvgPty>	[1..1]	±		86
	<b>RegistrationAgent</b> <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		87

#### 11.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the next party in the chain to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 11.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 256

#### 11.4.1.3 NumberOfItems <NbOfItms>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Number of individual items contained in the message.

*Datatype:* "Max15NumericText" on page 261

#### 11.4.1.4 ReceivingParty <RcvgPty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that receives the message.

**ReceivingParty <RcvgPty>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 173 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		175
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	175
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		176

#### 11.4.1.5 RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Agent which sends the message.

**RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

#### 11.4.2 GroupStatus <GrpSts>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Provides the group status for the global message.

**GroupStatus <GrpSts>** contains the following **CurrencyControlGroupStatus2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>OriginalReferences</b> <OrgnlRefs>	[1..1]			88
	<b>OriginalSender</b> <OrgnlSndr>	[0..1]	±		88
	<b>OriginalMessageIdentification</b> <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		89
	<b>OriginalMessageNameIdentification</b> <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		89
	<b>OriginalCreationDateTime</b> <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		89
	<b>ReportingParty</b> <RptgPty>	[1..1]	±		89
	<b>RegistrationAgent</b> <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		89
	<b>ReportingPeriod</b> <RptgPrd>	[0..1]	±		90
	<b>Status</b> <Sts>	[0..1]	CodeSet		90
	<b>StatusReason</b> <StsRsn>	[0..*]		C4	91
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		91
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			92
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		92
	<b>ValidationRule</b> <VldtnRule>	[0..*]	±		92
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		93
	<b>StatusDateTime</b> <StsDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		93

#### 11.4.2.1 OriginalReferences <OrgnlRefs>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Original underlying message references for which the status advice is provided.

**OriginalReferences <OrgnlRefs>** contains the following **OriginalMessage5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>OriginalSender</b> <OrgnlSndr>	[0..1]	±		88
	<b>OriginalMessageIdentification</b> <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		89
	<b>OriginalMessageNameIdentification</b> <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		89
	<b>OriginalCreationDateTime</b> <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		89

##### 11.4.2.1.1 OriginalSender <OrgnlSndr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original message sender used to identify the message.

**OriginalSender <OrgnlSndr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		179
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		179

#### 11.4.2.1.2 OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference assigned by the original instructing party to unambiguously identify the original group of individual transactions.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 262

#### 11.4.2.1.3 OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the original message name identifier to which the message refers, such as pacs.003.001.01 or MT103.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 262

#### 11.4.2.1.4 OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "[ISODatetime](#)" on page 256

#### 11.4.2.2 ReportingParty <RptgPty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party registering the currency control contract.

**ReportingParty <RptgPty>** contains the following elements (see "[TradeParty5](#)" on page 176 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PartyIdentification <PtyId>	[1..1]	±		177
	LegalOrganisation <LglOrg>	[0..1]	±		177
	TaxParty <TaxPty>	[0..*]	±		177

#### 11.4.2.3 RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Agent which registers the currency control contract.

**RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

#### 11.4.2.4 ReportingPeriod <RptgPrd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* For daily reporting this is the day to which the transaction data in the status message refers to.

For periodic reporting this is the first and the last day to which the transaction data in the status message refers.

**ReportingPeriod <RptgPrd>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Period4Choice](#)" on page 110 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		110
Or	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		110
Or	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		110
Or}	FromDateToDate <FrDtToDt>	[1..1]	±		110

#### 11.4.2.5 Status <Sts>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the status for the full report.

*Datatype:* "[StatisticalReportingStatus1Code](#)" on page 252

CodeName	Name	Definition
ACPT	Accepted	Transaction or report has been accepted.
ACTC	AcceptedTechnicalValidation	Transaction or report has passed syntactical and semantical validation.
PART	PartiallyAccepted	Report has been partially accepted. A number of transactions have been accepted, whereas another number of transactions have not yet been accepted.
PDNG	Pending	Processing of transaction or report is pending.
RCVD	Received	Report has been received.
RJCT	Rejected	Transaction or report has been rejected.
RMDR	Reminder	Reminder of a non received report.

CodeName	Name	Definition
INCF	IncorrectFilename	File containing the report has an incorrect filename.
CRPT	CorruptedFile	File containing the report is corrupted.

### 11.4.2.6 StatusReason <StsRsn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides detailed information on the status reason.

*Impacted by:* C4 "StatusReasonRule"

**StatusReason <StsRsn>** contains the following **ValidationStatusReason2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		91
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			92
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		92
	<b>ValidationRule</b> <VldtnRule>	[0..*]	±		92
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		93

#### Constraints

- **StatusReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR (Narrative), then AdditionalInformation must be present.

On Condition

    /Reason/Code is within DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleNarrative1Code

    And /Reason is present

    And /Reason/Code is present

Following Must be True

    /AdditionalInformation[1] Must be present

#### 11.4.2.6.1 Originator <Orgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that issues the status.

**Originator <Orgtr>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 173 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		175
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	175
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		176

#### 11.4.2.6.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the status.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **StatusReason6Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		92

##### 11.4.2.6.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the status, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalStatusReason1Code](#)" on page 250

##### 11.4.2.6.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the status, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 262

##### 11.4.2.6.3 ValidationRule <VldtnRule>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides details about the rule which could not be validated.

**ValidationRule <VldtnRule>** contains the following elements (see "GenericValidationRuleIdentification1" on page 169 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		170
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		170
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	±		170
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		170

#### 11.4.2.6.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Further details on the status reason.

Usage: Additional information can be used for several purposes such as the reporting of repaired information.

*Datatype:* "Max105Text" on page 260

#### 11.4.2.7 StatusDateTime <StsDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the date and time when the status was issued.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 256

### 11.4.3 PackageStatus <PackgSts>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides the status of the package in the message, which may contain the individual records.

**PackageStatus <PackgSts>** contains the following **CurrencyControlPackageStatus2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>PackageIdentification</b> <PackgId>	[1..1]	Text		94
	<b>Status</b> <Sts>	[1..1]	CodeSet		94
	<b>StatusReason</b> <StsRsn>	[0..*]		C4	95
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		96
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			96
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		96
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		96
	<b>ValidationRule</b> <VldtnRule>	[0..*]	±		96
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		97
	<b>StatusDateTime</b> <StsDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		97
	<b>RecordStatus</b> <RcrdSts>	[0..*]			97
	<b>RecordIdentification</b> <RcrdId>	[1..1]	Text		98
	<b>Status</b> <Sts>	[1..1]	CodeSet		98
	<b>StatusReason</b> <StsRsn>	[0..*]		C4	99
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		99
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			100
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		100
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		100
	<b>ValidationRule</b> <VldtnRule>	[0..*]	±		100
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		101
	<b>StatusDateTime</b> <StsDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		101
	<b>DocumentIdentification</b> <DocId>	[0..1]	±		101

#### 11.4.3.1 PackageIdentification <PackgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of each package of transactions and optionally the entry/record within the package of transactions.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 11.4.3.2 Status <Sts>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Defines the status of the reported transaction.

*Datatype:* "StatisticalReportingStatus1Code" on page 252

CodeName	Name	Definition
ACPT	Accepted	Transaction or report has been accepted.
ACTC	AcceptedTechnicalValidation	Transaction or report has passed syntactical and semantical validation.
PART	PartiallyAccepted	Report has been partially accepted. A number of transactions have been accepted, whereas another number of transactions have not yet been accepted.
PDNG	Pending	Processing of transaction or report is pending.
RCVD	Received	Report has been received.
RJCT	Rejected	Transaction or report has been rejected.
RMDR	Reminder	Reminder of a non received report.
INCF	IncorrectFilename	File containing the report has an incorrect filename.
CRPT	CorruptedFile	File containing the report is corrupted.

### 11.4.3.3 StatusReason <StsRsn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides detailed information on the status reason.

*Impacted by:* C4 "StatusReasonRule"

**StatusReason <StsRsn>** contains the following **ValidationStatusReason2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		96
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			96
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		96
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		96
	<b>ValidationRule</b> <VldtnRule>	[0..*]	±		96
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		97

#### Constraints

- **StatusReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR (Narrative), then AdditionalInformation must be present.

On Condition

    /Reason/Code is within DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleNarrative1Code

And     /Reason is present

And     /Reason/Code is present

Following Must be True  
/AdditionalInformation[1] Must be present

#### 11.4.3.3.1 Originator <Orgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that issues the status.

**Originator <Orgtr>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 173 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		175
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	175
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		176

#### 11.4.3.3.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the status.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **StatusReason6Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		96
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		96

##### 11.4.3.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the status, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalStatusReason1Code](#)" on page 250

##### 11.4.3.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the status, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 262

##### 11.4.3.3.3 ValidationRule <VldtnRule>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides details about the rule which could not be validated.

**ValidationRule <VldtnRule>** contains the following elements (see "GenericValidationRuleIdentification1" on page 169 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		170
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		170
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	±		170
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		170

#### 11.4.3.3.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Further details on the status reason.

Usage: Additional information can be used for several purposes such as the reporting of repaired information.

*Datatype:* "Max105Text" on page 260

#### 11.4.3.4 StatusDateTime <StsDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the date and time when the status was issued.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 256

#### 11.4.3.5 RecordStatus <RcrdSts>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides the status of the individual records in the package.

**RecordStatus <RcrdSts>** contains the following **CurrencyControlRecordStatus2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>RecordIdentification</b> <RcrdId>	[1..1]	Text		98
	<b>Status</b> <Sts>	[1..1]	CodeSet		98
	<b>StatusReason</b> <StsRsn>	[0..*]		C4	99
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		99
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			100
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		100
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		100
	<b>ValidationRule</b> <VldtnRule>	[0..*]	±		100
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		101
	<b>StatusDateTime</b> <StsDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		101
	<b>DocumentIdentification</b> <DocId>	[0..1]	±		101

#### 11.4.3.5.1 RecordIdentification <RcrdId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of each entry/record within the package of transactions.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 11.4.3.5.2 Status <Sts>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Defines the status of the reported record.

*Datatype:* "StatisticalReportingStatus1Code" on page 252

CodeName	Name	Definition
ACPT	Accepted	Transaction or report has been accepted.
ACTC	AcceptedTechnicalValidation	Transaction or report has passed syntactical and semantical validation.
PART	PartiallyAccepted	Report has been partially accepted. A number of transactions have been accepted, whereas another number of transactions have not yet been accepted.
PDNG	Pending	Processing of transaction or report is pending.
RCVD	Received	Report has been received.
RJCT	Rejected	Transaction or report has been rejected.
RMDR	Reminder	Reminder of a non received report.

CodeName	Name	Definition
INCF	IncorrectFilename	File containing the report has an incorrect filename.
CRPT	CorruptedFile	File containing the report is corrupted.

### 11.4.3.5.3 StatusReason <StsRsn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides detailed information on the status reason.

*Impacted by:* C4 "StatusReasonRule"

**StatusReason <StsRsn>** contains the following **ValidationStatusReason2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		99
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			100
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		100
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		100
	<b>ValidationRule</b> <VldtnRule>	[0..*]	±		100
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		101

#### Constraints

- **StatusReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR (Narrative), then AdditionalInformation must be present.

On Condition

/Reason/Code is within DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleNarrative1Code

And /Reason is present

And /Reason/Code is present

Following Must be True

/AdditionalInformation[1] Must be present

#### 11.4.3.5.3.1 Originator <Orgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that issues the status.

**Originator <Orgtr>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 173 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		175
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	175
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		176

#### 11.4.3.5.3.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the status.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **StatusReason6Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		100
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		100

##### 11.4.3.5.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the status, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalStatusReason1Code](#)" on page 250

##### 11.4.3.5.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the status, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 262

##### 11.4.3.5.3.3 ValidationRule <VldtnRule>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides details about the rule which could not be validated.

**ValidationRule <VldtnRule>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericValidationRuleIdentification1](#)" on page 169 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		170
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		170
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	±		170
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		170

**11.4.3.5.3.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Further details on the status reason.

Usage: Additional information can be used for several purposes such as the reporting of repaired information.

*Datatype:* ["Max105Text" on page 260](#)

**11.4.3.5.4 StatusDateTime <StsDtTm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the date and time when the status was issued.

*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime" on page 256](#)

**11.4.3.5.5 DocumentIdentification <DocId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the document.

**DocumentIdentification <DocId>** contains the following elements (see ["DocumentIdentification28" on page 164](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		164
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIssse>	[1..1]	Date		165

**11.4.4 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C5 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see ["SupplementaryData1" on page 167](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

**Constraints**

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 12 Message Items Types

## 12.1 MessageComponents

### 12.1.1 Account

#### 12.1.1.1 CashAccountType2Choice

*Definition:* Nature or use of the account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		102
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		102

##### 12.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Account type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalCashAccountType1Code" on page 247](#)

##### 12.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Nature or use of the account in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 262](#)

##### 12.1.1.2 CashAccount40

*Definition:* Provides the details to identify an account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		103
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		103
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	103
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		104
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		104

**Constraints**

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
And    /Proxy Must be present
```

**12.1.1.2.1 Identification <Id>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

**Identification <Id>** contains one of the following elements (see "[AccountIdentification4Choice](#)" on page 106 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C7	106
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	±		107

**12.1.1.2.2 Type <Tp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use of the account.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see "[CashAccountType2Choice](#)" on page 102 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		102
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		102

**12.1.1.2.3 Currency <Ccy>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the currency in which the account is held.

Usage: Currency should only be used in case one and the same account number covers several currencies

and the initiating party needs to identify which currency needs to be used for settlement on the account.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode](#)" on page 243

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**12.1.1.2.4 Name <Nm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the account, as assigned by the account servicing institution, in agreement with the account owner in order to provide an additional means of identification of the account.

*Usage:* The account name is different from the account owner name. The account name is used in certain user communities to provide a means of identifying the account, in addition to the account owner's identity and the account number.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 263

**12.1.1.2.5 Proxy <Prxy>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies an alternate assumed name for the identification of the account.

**Proxy <Prxy>** contains the following elements (see "ProxyAccountIdentification1" on page 105 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			105
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		106
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		106
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		106

**12.1.1.3 GenericAccountIdentification1**

*Definition:* Information related to a generic account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		104
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			105
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		105
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		105
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		105

**12.1.1.3.1 Identification <Id>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by an institution.

*Datatype:* "Max34Text" on page 262

### 12.1.1.3.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **AccountSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		105
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		105

#### 12.1.1.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalAccountIdentification1Code" on page 247

#### 12.1.1.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.1.3.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.1.4 ProxyAccountIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to a proxy identification of the account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			105
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		106
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		106
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		106

##### 12.1.1.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of the proxy identification.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **ProxyAccountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		106
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		106

#### 12.1.1.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalProxyAccountType1Code" on page 250

#### 12.1.1.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.1.4.2 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification used to indicate the account identification under another specified name.

*Datatype:* "Max2048Text" on page 261

## 12.1.2 Account Identification

### 12.1.2.1 AccountIdentification4Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the unique identification of an account as assigned by the account servicer.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C7	106
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	±		107

#### 12.1.2.1.1 IBAN <IBAN>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* International Bank Account Number (IBAN) - identifier used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer. Further specifications of the format and content of the IBAN can be found in the standard ISO 13616 "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" version 1997-10-01, or later revisions.

*Impacted by:* C7 "IBAN"

*Datatype:* "IBAN2007Identifier" on page 257

**Constraints**• **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**12.1.2.1.2 Other <Othr>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of an account, as assigned by the account servicer, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericAccountIdentification1](#)" on page 104 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		104
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			105
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		105
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		105
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		105

**12.1.3 Collateral****12.1.3.1 CashCollateral5**

*Definition:* Provides details about the cash posted as collateral.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CollateralIdentification <CollId>	[0..1]	Text		107
	CashAccountIdentification <CshAcctId>	[0..1]	±		108
	AssetNumber <AsstNb>	[0..1]	Text		108
	DepositAmount <DpstAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	108
	DepositType <DpstTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		108
	MaturityDate <MtrtyDt>	[0..1]	Date		109
	ValueDate <ValDt>	[0..1]	Date		109
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[0..1]	Rate		109
	CollateralValue <CollVal>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	109
	Haircut <Hrcut>	[0..1]	Rate		109

**12.1.3.1.1 CollateralIdentification <CollId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the identification of the proposed collateral.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

### 12.1.3.1.2 CashAccountIdentification <CshAcctId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the identification of the clearing member 's cash account.

**CashAccountIdentification <CshAcctId>** contains one of the following elements (see "AccountIdentification4Choice" on page 106 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C7	106
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	±		107

### 12.1.3.1.3 AssetNumber <AsstNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the register number of the collateral deposit assigned by the central counterparty.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

### 12.1.3.1.4 DepositAmount <DpstAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of the deposit.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 242

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 12.1.3.1.5 DepositType <DpstTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the deposit is fixed term or call/notice.

*Datatype:* "DepositType1Code" on page 247

CodeName	Name	Definition
FITE	FixedTerm	Specifies that it is a fixed term deposit.

CodeName	Name	Definition
CALL	Call	Specifies that it is a call/notice deposit.

#### 12.1.3.1.6 MaturityDate <MtrtyDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Planned final repayment date at the time of issuance.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

#### 12.1.3.1.7 ValueDate <ValDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Valuation date of the cash taken as collateral.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

#### 12.1.3.1.8 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Exchange rate.

*Datatype:* "BaseOneRate" on page 259

#### 12.1.3.1.9 CollateralValue <CollVal>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Value of the collateral after taking into account the haircut.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 242

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 12.1.3.1.10 Haircut <Hrcut>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Haircut or valuation factor on the collateral expressed as a percentage.

*Datatype:* "PercentageRate" on page 259

## 12.1.4 Date Period

### 12.1.4.1 Period4Choice

*Definition:* Choice between date and date-time for the specification of a period.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		110
Or	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		110
Or	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		110
Or}	FromDateToDate <FrDtToDt>	[1..1]	±		110

#### 12.1.4.1.1 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date period is limited to a single date.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

#### 12.1.4.1.2 FromDate <FrDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date at which the date period range starts.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

#### 12.1.4.1.3 ToDate <ToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date which the range date period ends.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

#### 12.1.4.1.4 FromDateToDate <FrDtToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Time span defined by a start date, and an end date.

**FromDateToDate <FrDtToDt>** contains the following elements (see "Period2" on page 110 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		111
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		111

## 12.1.5 Date Time

### 12.1.5.1 Period2

*Definition:* Time span defined by a start date and time, and an end date and time.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		111
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		111

#### 12.1.5.1.1 FromDate <FrDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the range starts.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

#### 12.1.5.1.2 ToDate <ToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the range ends.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

### 12.1.6 Date Time Period

#### 12.1.6.1 TimePeriod2

*Definition:* Particular time span specified between a start time and an end time. The time period cannot exceed 24 hours.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromTime <FrTm>	[1..1]	Time		111
	ToTime <ToTm>	[0..1]	Time		111

#### 12.1.6.1.1 FromTime <FrTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Time at which the time span starts.

*Datatype:* "ISOTime" on page 264

#### 12.1.6.1.2 ToTime <ToTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Time at which the time span ends.

*Datatype:* "ISOTime" on page 264

#### 12.1.6.2 ReportingPeriod4

*Definition:* Specifies the requested reporting period.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[1..1]			112
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		112
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		112
	FromToTime <FrToTm>	[1..1]	±		112
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112

### 12.1.6.2.1 FromToDate <FrToDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a date range.

**FromToDate <FrToDt>** contains the following **DatePeriod3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		112
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		112

#### 12.1.6.2.1.1 FromDate <FrDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

#### 12.1.6.2.1.2 ToDate <ToDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

### 12.1.6.2.2 FromToTime <FrToTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a time range.

**FromToTime <FrToTm>** contains the following elements (see "TimePeriod2" on page 111 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromTime <FrTm>	[1..1]	Time		111
	ToTime <ToTm>	[0..1]	Time		111

### 12.1.6.2.3 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether all matching items need to be reported or only those items that are new or have changed since the last similar request was made.

*Datatype:* "QueryType3Code" on page 252

CodeName	Name	Definition
ALLL	All	Specifies that the query requests that all matching items be returned.
CHNG	Changed	Specifies that the query requests that only new matching items since the last similar query be returned.
MODF	Modified	Specifies that the query requests that only items that have changed since the last query be returned.

## 12.1.7 Document

### 12.1.7.1 UnderlyingContract3Choice

*Definition:* Choice of the type of underlying contract.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Loan <Ln>	[1..1]	±		114
Or}	Trade <Trad>	[1..1]			117
	ContractDocumentIdentification <CtrctDocId>	[0..1]	±		118
	TradeTypeIdentification <TradTpId>	[0..1]	Text		119
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	119
	Buyer <Buyr>	[1..*]	±		119
	Seller <Sellr>	[1..*]	±		119
	MaturityDate <MtrtyDt>	[0..1]	Date		120
	ProlongationFlag <PrlnghnFlg>	[0..1]	Indicator		120
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		120
	SettlementCurrency <SttlmCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	120
	ExchangeRateInformation <XchgRateInf>	[0..1]			120
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	121
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[0..1]	Rate		121
	RateType <RateTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		121
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		121
	PaymentSchedule <PmtSchdl>	[0..1]			122
	InterestScheduleIdentification <IntrstSchdlId>	[0..1]	Text		122
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[0..1]	Date		122
	DueDate <DueDt>	[0..1]	Date		122
	ShipmentSchedule <ShpmtSchdl>	[0..1]			122
{Or	ShipmentDateRange <ShpmtDtRg>	[1..1]			123
	EarliestShipmentDate <EarlstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		123
	LatestShipmentDate <LatstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		123
Or}	ShipmentSubSchedule <ShpmtSubSchdl>	[2..*]			123
	SubQuantityValue <SubQtyVal>	[1..1]	Quantity		124
	EarliestShipmentDate <EarlstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		124
	LatestShipmentDate <LatstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		124
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		124

### 12.1.7.1.1 Loan <Ln>

Presence: [1..1]

*Definition:* Underlying registered contract is a loan.

**Loan <Ln>** contains the following elements (see "LoanContract3" on page 133 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ContractDocumentIdentification <CtrctDocId>	[1..1]	±		135
	LoanTypeIdentification <LnTpld>	[0..1]	Text		135
	Buyer <Buyr>	[1..*]	±		135
	Seller <Sellr>	[1..*]	±		135
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	136
	MaturityDate <MtrtyDt>	[0..1]	Date		136
	ProlongationFlag <PrIngtNFlg>	[0..1]	Indicator		136
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		136
	SettlementCurrency <SttlmCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	137
	SpecialConditions <SpclConds>	[0..1]			137
	IncomingAmount <IncmgAmt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	137
	OutgoingAmount <OutgngAmt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	138
	IncomingAmountToOtherAccount <IncmgAmtToOthrAcct>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	138
	PaymentFromOtherAccount <PmtFrOthrAcct>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	138
	DurationCode <DrtnCd>	[0..1]	Text		139
	InterestRate <IntrstRate>	[0..1]	±		139
	Tranche <Trch>	[0..*]	±		139
	PaymentSchedule <PmtSchdl>	[0..*]	±	C11	140
	InterestSchedule <IntrstSchdl>	[0..*]	±	C9	140
	IntraCompanyLoan <IntraCpnyLn>	[1..1]	Indicator		141
	Collateral <Coll>	[0..1]			141
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	141
	CollateralDescription <CollDesc>	[0..*]	±		142
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		142
	SyndicatedLoan <SndctdLn>	[0..*]		C3	142
	Borrower <Brrwr>	[1..1]	±		143
	Lender <Lndr>	[0..1]	±		143
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	144
	Share <Shr>	[0..1]	Rate		144
	ExchangeRateInformation <XchgRateInf>	[0..1]			144

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	145
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[0..1]	Rate		145
	RateType <RateTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		145
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		145
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		145

### 12.1.7.1.2 Trade <Trad>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Underlying registered contract is a commercial trade.

**Trade <Trad>** contains the following **TradeContract3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ContractDocumentIdentification <CtrctDocId>	[0..1]	±		118
	TradeTypeIdentification <TradTpId>	[0..1]	Text		119
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	119
	Buyer <Buyr>	[1..*]	±		119
	Seller <Sellr>	[1..*]	±		119
	MaturityDate <MtrtyDt>	[0..1]	Date		120
	ProlongationFlag <PrIngnFlg>	[0..1]	Indicator		120
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		120
	SettlementCurrency <SttlmCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	120
	ExchangeRateInformation <XchgRateInf>	[0..1]			120
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	121
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[0..1]	Rate		121
	RateType <RateTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		121
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		121
	PaymentSchedule <PmtSchdl>	[0..1]			122
	InterestScheduleIdentification <IntrstSchdlId>	[0..1]	Text		122
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[0..1]	Date		122
	DueDate <DueDt>	[0..1]	Date		122
	ShipmentSchedule <ShipmntSchdl>	[0..1]			122
{Or	ShipmentDateRange <ShipmntDtRg>	[1..1]			123
	EarliestShipmentDate <EarlstShipmntDt>	[0..1]	Date		123
	LatestShipmentDate <LatstShipmntDt>	[0..1]	Date		123
Or}	ShipmentSubSchedule <ShipmntSubSchdl>	[2..*]			123
	SubQuantityValue <SubQtyVal>	[1..1]	Quantity		124
	EarliestShipmentDate <EarlstShipmntDt>	[0..1]	Date		124
	LatestShipmentDate <LatstShipmntDt>	[0..1]	Date		124
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		124

#### 12.1.7.1.2.1 ContractDocumentIdentification <CtrctDocId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Contract document referenced from this trade agreement.

**ContractDocumentIdentification <CtrctDocId>** contains the following elements (see "[DocumentIdentification22](#)" on page 165 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		165
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIssse>	[0..1]	Date		165

#### 12.1.7.1.2.2 TradeTypeIdentification <TradTpId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type code of the trade contract.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 262

#### 12.1.7.1.2.3 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of the trade contract.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C5 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 242

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 12.1.7.1.2.4 Buyer <Buyr>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Party that is specified as the buyer for this trade agreement.

**Buyer <Buyr>** contains the following elements (see "[TradeParty5](#)" on page 176 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PartyIdentification <PtyId>	[1..1]	±		177
	LegalOrganisation <LglOrg>	[0..1]	±		177
	TaxParty <TaxPty>	[0..*]	±		177

#### 12.1.7.1.2.5 Seller <Sellr>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Party that is specified as the seller for this trade agreement.

**Seller <Sellr>** contains the following elements (see "[TradeParty5](#)" on page 176 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PartyIdentification <PtyId>	[1..1]	±		177
	LegalOrganisation <LglOrg>	[0..1]	±		177
	TaxParty <TaxPty>	[0..*]	±		177

#### 12.1.7.1.2.6 MaturityDate <MtrtyDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Planned final payment date at the time of issuance.

*Datatype:* "[ISODate](#)" on page 256

#### 12.1.7.1.2.7 ProlongationFlag <PrIngtnFlg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the contract duration is extended or not.

When absent, the flag meaning is NotApplicable.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 258):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 12.1.7.1.2.8 StartDate <StartDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the trade contract.

*Datatype:* "[ISODate](#)" on page 256

#### 12.1.7.1.2.9 SettlementCurrency <SttlmCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency in which the trade is being settled.

*Impacted by:* C1 "[ActiveCurrency](#)"

*Datatype:* "[ActiveCurrencyCode](#)" on page 243

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 12.1.7.1.2.10 ExchangeRateInformation <XchgRateInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the currency exchange rate and contract.

**ExchangeRateInformation <XchgRateInf>** contains the following **ExchangeRate1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	121
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[0..1]	Rate		121
	RateType <RateTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		121
	ContractIdentification <Ctrctld>	[0..1]	Text		121

#### 12.1.7.1.2.10.1 UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency in which the rate of exchange is expressed in a currency exchange. In the example 1GBP = xxxCUR, the unit currency is GBP.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 243

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### 12.1.7.1.2.10.2 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* The factor used for conversion of an amount from one currency to another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

*Datatype:* "BaseOneRate" on page 259

#### 12.1.7.1.2.10.3 RateType <RateTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type used to complete the currency exchange.

*Datatype:* "ExchangeRateType1Code" on page 247

CodeName	Name	Definition
SPOT	Spot	Exchange rate applied is the spot rate.
SALE	Sale	Exchange rate applied is the market rate at the time of the sale.
AGRD	Agreed	Exchange rate applied is the rate agreed between the parties.

#### 12.1.7.1.2.10.4 ContractIdentification <Ctrctld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous reference to the foreign exchange contract agreed between the initiating party/creditor and the debtor agent.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.7.1.2.11 PaymentSchedule <PmtSchdl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Schedule of the payments defined for the trade contract.

**PaymentSchedule <PmtSchdl>** contains the following **InterestPaymentDateRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InterestScheduleIdentification <IntrstSchdlId>	[0..1]	Text		122
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[0..1]	Date		122
	DueDate <DueDt>	[0..1]	Date		122

##### 12.1.7.1.2.11.1 InterestScheduleIdentification <IntrstSchdlId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the interest payment schedule.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

##### 12.1.7.1.2.11.2 ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Expected interest payment date.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

##### 12.1.7.1.2.11.3 DueDate <DueDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Latest date whereby the interest must be paid.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

##### 12.1.7.1.2.12 ShipmentSchedule <ShipmntSchdl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Schedule of the shipment.

**ShipmentSchedule <ShipmntSchdl>** contains one of the following **ShipmentSchedule2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	ShipmentDateRange <ShipmntDtRg>	[1..1]			123
	EarliestShipmentDate <EarlstShipmntDt>	[0..1]	Date		123
	LatestShipmentDate <LatstShipmntDt>	[0..1]	Date		123
Or}	ShipmentSubSchedule <ShipmntSubSchdl>	[2..*]			123
	SubQuantityValue <SubQtyVal>	[1..1]	Quantity		124
	EarliestShipmentDate <EarlstShipmntDt>	[0..1]	Date		124
	LatestShipmentDate <LatstShipmntDt>	[0..1]	Date		124

#### 12.1.7.1.2.12.1 ShipmentDateRange <ShipmntDtRg>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies an earliest shipment date and a latest shipment date.

**ShipmentDateRange <ShipmntDtRg>** contains the following **ShipmentDateRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EarliestShipmentDate <EarlstShipmntDt>	[0..1]	Date		123
	LatestShipmentDate <LatstShipmntDt>	[0..1]	Date		123

##### 12.1.7.1.2.12.1.1 EarliestShipmentDate <EarlstShipmntDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Earliest date whereby the goods must be shipped.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

##### 12.1.7.1.2.12.1.2 LatestShipmentDate <LatstShipmntDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Latest date whereby the goods must be shipped.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

##### 12.1.7.1.2.12.2 ShipmentSubSchedule <ShipmntSubSchdl>

*Presence:* [2..\*]

*Definition:* Specifies a shipment schedule, ie, quantity that must be shipped no sooner than the earliest shipment date and no later than the latest shipment date.

**ShipmentSubSchedule <ShipmentSubSchdl>** contains the following **ShipmentDateRange2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SubQuantityValue <SubQtyVal>	[1..1]	Quantity		124
	EarliestShipmentDate <EarlstShipmentDt>	[0..1]	Date		124
	LatestShipmentDate <LatstShipmentDt>	[0..1]	Date		124

#### 12.1.7.1.2.12.2.1 SubQuantityValue <SubQtyVal>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Sub quantity that must be shipped no sooner than the earliest shipment date and no later than the latest shipment date.

*Datatype:* "DecimalNumber" on page 259

#### 12.1.7.1.2.12.2.2 EarliestShipmentDate <EarlstShipmentDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Earliest date whereby the goods must be shipped.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

#### 12.1.7.1.2.12.2.3 LatestShipmentDate <LatstShipmentDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Latest date whereby the goods must be shipped.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

#### 12.1.7.1.2.13 Attachment <Attchmnt>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Documents provided as attachments to the trade contract.

**Attachment <Attchmnt>** contains the following elements (see "[DocumentGeneralInformation5](#)" on page 125 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DocumentType <DocTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		126
	DocumentNumber <DocNb>	[1..1]	Text		126
	DocumentName <DocNm>	[0..1]	Text		126
	SenderReceiverSequenceIdentification <SndrRcvrSeqId>	[0..1]	Text		126
	IssueDate <IsseDt>	[0..1]	Date		126
	URL <URL>	[0..1]	Text		126
	LinkFileHash <LkFileHash>	[0..1]	(External Schema)		126
	AttachedBinaryFile <AttchdBinryFile>	[1..1]			127
	MIMEType <MIMETp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	EncodingType <NcodgTp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	CharacterSet <CharSet>	[0..1]	Text		127
	IncludedBinaryObject <InclBinryObjct>	[0..1]	Binary		127

### 12.1.7.2 DocumentGeneralInformation5

*Definition:* General information that unambiguously identifies a document, such as identification number and issue date time.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DocumentType <DocTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		126
	DocumentNumber <DocNb>	[1..1]	Text		126
	DocumentName <DocNm>	[0..1]	Text		126
	SenderReceiverSequenceIdentification <SndrRcvrSeqId>	[0..1]	Text		126
	IssueDate <IsseDt>	[0..1]	Date		126
	URL <URL>	[0..1]	Text		126
	LinkFileHash <LkFileHash>	[0..1]	(External Schema)		126
	AttachedBinaryFile <AttchdBinryFile>	[1..1]			127
	MIMEType <MIMETp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	EncodingType <NcodgTp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	CharacterSet <CharSet>	[0..1]	Text		127
	IncludedBinaryObject <InclBinryObjct>	[0..1]	Binary		127

**12.1.7.2.1 DocumentType <DocTp>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of the document, for example commercial invoice.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDocumentType1Code" on page 248

**12.1.7.2.2 DocumentNumber <DocNb>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identifier of the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.7.2.3 DocumentName <DocNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the document

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 261

**12.1.7.2.4 SenderReceiverSequenceIdentification <SndrRcvrSeqId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the identification sequence number for a specific couple sender/receiver.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 261

**12.1.7.2.5 IssueDate <IsseDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Issue date of the document.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

**12.1.7.2.6 URL <URL>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* URL (Uniform Resource Locator) where the document can be found.

*Datatype:* "Max256Text" on page 262

**12.1.7.2.7 LinkFileHash <LkFileHash>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Full Signature Structure without Signature itself:

Hash + Certificate.

*Type:* (External Schema)

The W3C XML Schema that specifies following standard signature:

XML Signature Syntax and Processing (Second Edition) W3C Recommendation 10 June 2008

<http://www.w3.org/TR/2008/REC-xmlsig-core-20080610/>.

**12.1.7.2.8 AttachedBinaryFile <AttchdBinaryFile>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Attached binary file for this document.

**AttachedBinaryFile <AttchdBinaryFile>** contains the following **BinaryFile1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MIMETYPE <MIMETp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	EncodingType <NcodgTp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	CharacterSet <CharSet>	[0..1]	Text		127
	IncludedBinaryObject <InclBinryObjct>	[0..1]	Binary		127

**12.1.7.2.8.1 MIMETYPE <MIMETp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Code specifying the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) type for this attached binary file. Reference IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority) - MIME Media Types ([www.iana.org/assignments/media-types](http://www.iana.org/assignments/media-types)).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.7.2.8.2 EncodingType <NcodgTp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the encoding algorithm used for this attached binary file. Reference IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority) - Transfer Encodings ([www.iana.org/assignments/transfer-encodings](http://www.iana.org/assignments/transfer-encodings)).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.7.2.8.3 CharacterSet <CharSet>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a code signifying the particular character set used for this attached binary file. Reference IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority) - Character Sets ([www.iana.org/assignments/character-sets](http://www.iana.org/assignments/character-sets)).

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.7.2.8.4 IncludedBinaryObject <InclBinryObjct>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Binary object included in this attached binary file.

*Datatype:* "Max100KBinary" on page 243

**12.1.7.3 DocumentIdentification35**

*Definition:* Identifies a document by a unique identification and a date of issue.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		128
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIsse>	[0..1]	Date		128

#### 12.1.7.3.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.7.3.2 DateOfIssue <DtOfIsse>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date of issuance of the document.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

#### 12.1.7.4 SupportingDocumentRequestOrLetter3

*Definition:* Currency control related document or letter supporting the contract registration.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	RequestOrLetterIdentification <ReqOrLtrId>	[1..1]	Text		129
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		129
	Sender <Sndr>	[0..1]	±		129
	Receiver <Rcvr>	[0..1]	±		130
	OriginalReferences <OrgnlRefs>	[0..*]			130
	OriginalSender <OrgnlSndr>	[0..1]	±		130
	OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		131
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		131
	OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		131
	OriginalPackageIdentification <OrgnlPackgId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	OriginalRecordIdentification <OrgnlRcrdId>	[1..1]	Text		131
	Subject <Sbj>	[1..1]	Text		131
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			131
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		132
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		132
	ResponseRequired <RspnReqrd>	[1..1]	Indicator		132
	DueDate <DueDt>	[0..1]	Date		132
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		132
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C7	133

#### 12.1.7.4.1 RequestOrLetterIdentification <ReqOrLtrId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the supporting document request or the letter.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.7.4.2 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date of the supporting document request or the letter.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

#### 12.1.7.4.3 Sender <Sndr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Sender of the request or letter.

**Sender <Sndr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		179
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		179

#### 12.1.7.4.4 Receiver <Rcvr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Receiver of the request or letter.

**Receiver <Rcvr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		179
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		179

#### 12.1.7.4.5 OriginalReferences <OrgnIRefs>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides the references of the original underlying message(s) for which supporting documents are requested or for which the letter is sent.

**OriginalReferences <OrgnIRefs>** contains the following **OriginalMessage4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalSender <OrgnISndr>	[0..1]	±		130
	OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnIMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		131
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnIMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		131
	OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnICreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		131
	OriginalPackageIdentification <OrgnIPackgId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	OriginalRecordIdentification <OrgnIRcrdId>	[1..1]	Text		131

##### 12.1.7.4.5.1 OriginalSender <OrgnISndr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original message sender used to identify the message.

**OriginalSender <OrgnISndr>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party40Choice](#)" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		179
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		179

**12.1.7.4.5.2 OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnMsgId>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference assigned by the original instructing party to unambiguously identify the original group of individual transactions.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.7.4.5.3 OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnMsgNmId>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the original message name identifier to which the message refers, such as pacs.003.001.01 or MT103.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.7.4.5.4 OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnCreDtTm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Original date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 256

**12.1.7.4.5.5 OriginalPackageIdentification <OrgnPackgId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the identification of original package of instructions, entries or records.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.7.4.5.6 OriginalRecordIdentification <OrgnRcrdId>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the identification of original entry, instruction or record within the package.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.7.4.6 Subject <Sbjt>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Subject of the letter or supporting document.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 261

**12.1.7.4.7 Type <Tp>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the type of supporting document requested.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **SupportLetterType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		132

**12.1.7.4.7.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of supporting letter expressed as an ISO 20022 code.

*Datatype:* "ExternalLetterType1Code" on page 249

**12.1.7.4.7.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of supporting letter expressed as a proprietary code.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.7.4.8 Description <Desc>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further free format description of the request.

*Datatype:* "Max1025Text" on page 260

**12.1.7.4.9 ResponseRequired <RspnReqrd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Flag to indicate whether a response is required or not.

Usage: when the request is used to send a letter, there is no response required.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 258):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

**12.1.7.4.10 DueDate <DueDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date by which the response to the request is expected.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

**12.1.7.4.11 Attachment <Attchmnt>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Documents provided as attachments to the supporting document request or letter.

**Attachment <Attchmnt>** contains the following elements (see "[DocumentGeneralInformation5](#)" on page 125 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DocumentType <DocTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		126
	DocumentNumber <DocNb>	[1..1]	Text		126
	DocumentName <DocNm>	[0..1]	Text		126
	SenderReceiverSequenceIdentification <SndrRcvrSeqId>	[0..1]	Text		126
	IssueDate <IsseDt>	[0..1]	Date		126
	URL <URL>	[0..1]	Text		126
	LinkFileHash <LkFileHash>	[0..1]	(External Schema)		126
	AttachedBinaryFile <AttchdBinryFile>	[1..1]			127
	MIMEType <MIMETp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	EncodingType <NcodgTp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	CharacterSet <CharSet>	[0..1]	Text		127
	IncludedBinaryObject <InclBinryObjct>	[0..1]	Binary		127

#### 12.1.7.4.12 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C7 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

#### 12.1.7.5 LoanContract3

*Definition:* Contract by which an amount of money in exchange for future repayment of the principal amount along with interest or other finance charges.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ContractDocumentIdentification <CtrctDocId>	[1..1]	±		135
	LoanTypeIdentification <LnTpld>	[0..1]	Text		135
	Buyer <Buyr>	[1..*]	±		135
	Seller <Sellr>	[1..*]	±		135
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	136
	MaturityDate <MtrtyDt>	[0..1]	Date		136
	ProlongationFlag <PrIngtNFlg>	[0..1]	Indicator		136
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		136
	SettlementCurrency <SttlmCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	137
	SpecialConditions <SpclConds>	[0..1]			137
	IncomingAmount <IncmgAmt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	137
	OutgoingAmount <OutgngAmt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	138
	IncomingAmountToOtherAccount <IncmgAmtToOthrAcct>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	138
	PaymentFromOtherAccount <PmtFrOthrAcct>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	138
	DurationCode <DrtnCd>	[0..1]	Text		139
	InterestRate <IntrstRate>	[0..1]	±		139
	Tranche <Trch>	[0..*]	±		139
	PaymentSchedule <PmtSchdl>	[0..*]	±	C11	140
	InterestSchedule <IntrstSchdl>	[0..*]	±	C9	140
	IntraCompanyLoan <IntraCpnyLn>	[1..1]	Indicator		141
	Collateral <Coll>	[0..1]			141
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	141
	CollateralDescription <CollDesc>	[0..*]	±		142
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		142
	SyndicatedLoan <SndctdLn>	[0..*]		C3	142
	Borrower <Brrwr>	[1..1]	±		143
	Lender <Lndr>	[0..1]	±		143
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	144
	Share <Shr>	[0..1]	Rate		144
	ExchangeRateInformation <XchgRateInf>	[0..1]			144
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	145

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[0..1]	Rate		145
	RateType <RateTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		145
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		145
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		145

#### 12.1.7.5.1 ContractDocumentIdentification <CtrctDocId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Contract document referenced from this loan agreement.

**ContractDocumentIdentification <CtrctDocId>** contains the following elements (see "[DocumentIdentification22](#)" on page 165 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		165
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIssse>	[0..1]	Date		165

#### 12.1.7.5.2 LoanTypeIdentification <LnTpId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type code of the loan contract.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 262

#### 12.1.7.5.3 Buyer <Buyr>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Party that is specified as the buyer for this loan agreement.

**Buyer <Buyr>** contains the following elements (see "[TradeParty5](#)" on page 176 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PartyIdentification <PtyId>	[1..1]	±		177
	LegalOrganisation <LglOrg>	[0..1]	±		177
	TaxParty <TaxPty>	[0..*]	±		177

#### 12.1.7.5.4 Seller <Sellr>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Party that is specified as the seller for this loan agreement.

**Seller <Sellr>** contains the following elements (see "[TradeParty5](#)" on page 176 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PartyIdentification <PtyId>	[1..1]	±		177
	LegalOrganisation <LglOrg>	[0..1]	±		177
	TaxParty <TaxPty>	[0..*]	±		177

#### 12.1.7.5.5 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Loan amount as defined in the contract.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C5 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 242

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 12.1.7.5.6 MaturityDate <MtrtyDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Planned final repayment date at the time of issuance.

*Datatype:* "[ISODate](#)" on page 256

#### 12.1.7.5.7 ProlongationFlag <PrIngtnFlg>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the contract duration is extended or not.

When absent, the flag meaning is NotApplicable.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 258):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 12.1.7.5.8 StartDate <StartDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the loan contract.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

### 12.1.7.5.9 SettlementCurrency <SttlmCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency in which the loan is being settled.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyCode" on page 243

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### 12.1.7.5.10 SpecialConditions <SpclConds>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Special conditions applicable when the amount is credited outside of the country.

**SpecialConditions <SpclConds>** contains the following **SpecialCondition1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	IncomingAmount <IncmgAmt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	137
	OutgoingAmount <OutgngAmt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	138
	IncomingAmountToOtherAccount <IncmgAmtToOthrAcct>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	138
	PaymentFromOtherAccount <PmtFrOthrAcct>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	138

#### 12.1.7.5.10.1 IncomingAmount <IncmgAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Incoming amount on special conditions.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 242

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 12.1.7.5.10.2 OutgoingAmount <OutgngAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Outgoing amount on special conditions.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 242

##### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 12.1.7.5.10.3 IncomingAmountToOtherAccount <IncmgAmtToOthrAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Incoming amount to other account on special conditions.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 242

##### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 12.1.7.5.10.4 PaymentFromOtherAccount <PmtFrOthrAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Outgoing payment amount from other account on special conditions.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 242

**Constraints**

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**12.1.7.5.11 DurationCode <DrtnCd>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Loan duration in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "Exact1NumericText" on page 260

**12.1.7.5.12 InterestRate <IntrstRate>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Interest rate for the loan.

**InterestRate <IntrstRate>** contains one of the following elements (see "InterestRate2Choice" on page 190 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Fixed <Fxd>	[1..1]	Rate		191
Or}	Floating <Fltg>	[1..1]			191
	ReferenceRate <RefRate>	[1..1]			191
{Or	ISIN <ISIN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet		192
Or	Index <Indx>	[1..1]	CodeSet		192
Or}	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		194
	Term <Term>	[1..1]			194
	Unit <Unit>	[1..1]	CodeSet		194
	Value <Val>	[1..1]	Quantity		194
	BasisPointSpread <BsisPtSprd>	[1..1]	Quantity		195

**12.1.7.5.13 Tranche <Trch>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* One part or division of the loan, used to define the repayment.

**Tranche <Trch>** contains the following elements (see "[LoanContractTranche1](#)" on page 165 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TrancheNumber <TrchNb>	[1..1]	Quantity		165
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[1..1]	Date		166
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	166
	DueDate <DueDt>	[0..1]	Date		166
	DurationCode <DrtnCd>	[0..1]	Text		166
	LastTrancheIndicator <LastTrchInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		166

#### 12.1.7.5.14 PaymentSchedule <PmtSchdl>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Schedule of the payments defined for the loan contract.

*Impacted by:* [C11 "PaymentScheduleItemRule"](#)

**PaymentSchedule <PmtSchdl>** contains the following elements (see "[PaymentSchedule1](#)" on page 180 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PaymentScheduleIdentification <PmtSchdlId>	[0..1]	Text		180
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	180
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[0..1]	Date		181
	DueDate <DueDt>	[0..1]	Date		181
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		181

#### Constraints

- **PaymentScheduleItemRule**

At least one element must be present in PaymentSchedule.

Following Must be True

/PaymentScheduleIdentification Must be present

Or /Amount Must be present

Or /ExpectedDate Must be present

Or /DueDate Must be present

Or /AdditionalInformation Must be present

#### 12.1.7.5.15 InterestSchedule <IntrstSchdl>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Schedule of the interest payments defined for the loan contract.

*Impacted by:* [C9 "InterestSchedulePresenceRule"](#)

**InterestSchedule <IntrstSchdl>** contains the following elements (see "[InterestPaymentSchedule1](#)" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InterestScheduleIdentification <IntrstSchdlId>	[0..1]	Text		168
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	168
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[0..1]	Date		168
	DueDate <DueDt>	[0..1]	Date		168
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		168

#### Constraints

- **InterestSchedulePresenceRule**

At least on element must be present in the InterestPaymentSchedule.

Following Must be True

/InterestScheduleIdentification Must be present

Or /Amount Must be present

Or /ExpectedDate Must be present

Or /DueDate Must be present

Or /AdditionalInformation Must be present

#### 12.1.7.5.16 IntraCompanyLoan <IntraCpnyLn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Loan is an intra company loan.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 258):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 12.1.7.5.17 Collateral <Coll>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Details of the collateral for the loan.

**Collateral <Coll>** contains the following **ContractCollateral1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	141
	CollateralDescription <CollDesc>	[0..*]	±		142
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		142

#### 12.1.7.5.17.1 TotalAmount <TtlAmt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of the collateral as defined in the contract.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 242

### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 12.1.7.5.17.2 CollateralDescription <CollDesc>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Detailed description of the collateral.

**CollateralDescription <CollDesc>** contains the following elements (see "CashCollateral5" on page 107 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CollateralIdentification <CollId>	[0..1]	Text		107
	CashAccountIdentification <CshAcctId>	[0..1]	±		108
	AssetNumber <AsstNb>	[0..1]	Text		108
	DepositAmount <DpstAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	108
	DepositType <DpstTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		108
	MaturityDate <MtrtyDt>	[0..1]	Date		109
	ValueDate <ValDt>	[0..1]	Date		109
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[0..1]	Rate		109
	CollateralValue <CollVal>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	109
	Haircut <Hrcut>	[0..1]	Rate		109

### 12.1.7.5.17.3 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further information on the contract collateral.

*Datatype:* "Max1025Text" on page 260

### 12.1.7.5.18 SyndicatedLoan <SndctdLn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Loan offered by a group of lenders (called a syndicate) who work together to provide funds for a single borrower.

*Impacted by:* C3 "AmountOrShareRule"

**SyndicatedLoan <SndctdLn>** contains the following **SyndicatedLoan2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Borrower <Brrwr>	[1..1]	±		143
	Lender <Lndr>	[0..1]	±		143
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	144
	Share <Shr>	[0..1]	Rate		144
	ExchangeRateInformation <XchgRateInf>	[0..1]			144
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	145
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[0..1]	Rate		145
	RateType <RateTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		145
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		145

### Constraints

- **AmountOrShareRule**

Amount must be present or Share must be present.

Following Must be True

/Share Must be present

Or /Amount Must be present

#### 12.1.7.5.18.1 Borrower <Brrwr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party which obtains the loan.

**Borrower <Brrwr>** contains the following elements (see "[TradeParty5](#)" on page 176 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PartyIdentification <PtyId>	[1..1]	±		177
	LegalOrganisation <LglOrg>	[0..1]	±		177
	TaxParty <TaxPty>	[0..*]	±		177

#### 12.1.7.5.18.2 Lender <Lndr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party which provides an amount of money available to others to borrow.

**Lender <Lndr>** contains the following elements (see "[TradeParty5](#)" on page 176 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PartyIdentification <PtyId>	[1..1]	±		177
	LegalOrganisation <LglOrg>	[0..1]	±		177
	TaxParty <TaxPty>	[0..*]	±		177

#### 12.1.7.5.18.3 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of the part in the syndicated loan.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C5 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 242

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 12.1.7.5.18.4 Share <Shr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Share of the part in the syndicated loan.

*Datatype:* "[PercentageRate](#)" on page 259

#### 12.1.7.5.18.5 ExchangeRateInformation <XchgRateInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details on the currency exchange rate and contract.

**ExchangeRateInformation <XchgRateInf>** contains the following **ExchangeRate1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	145
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[0..1]	Rate		145
	RateType <RateTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		145
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		145

**12.1.7.5.18.5.1 UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Currency in which the rate of exchange is expressed in a currency exchange. In the example 1GBP = xxxCUR, the unit currency is GBP.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 243

**Constraints****• ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**12.1.7.5.18.5.2 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* The factor used for conversion of an amount from one currency to another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

*Datatype:* "BaseOneRate" on page 259

**12.1.7.5.18.5.3 RateType <RateTp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type used to complete the currency exchange.

*Datatype:* "ExchangeRateType1Code" on page 247

CodeName	Name	Definition
SPOT	Spot	Exchange rate applied is the spot rate.
SALE	Sale	Exchange rate applied is the market rate at the time of the sale.
AGRD	Agreed	Exchange rate applied is the rate agreed between the parties.

**12.1.7.5.18.5.4 ContractIdentification <CtrctId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous reference to the foreign exchange contract agreed between the initiating party/creditor and the debtor agent.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.7.5.19 Attachment <Attchmnt>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Documents provided as attachments to the loan contract.

**Attachment <Attchmnt>** contains the following elements (see "[DocumentGeneralInformation5](#)" on page 125 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DocumentType <DocTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		126
	DocumentNumber <DocNb>	[1..1]	Text		126
	DocumentName <DocNm>	[0..1]	Text		126
	SenderReceiverSequenceIdentification <SndrRcvrSeqId>	[0..1]	Text		126
	IssueDate <IsseDt>	[0..1]	Date		126
	URL <URL>	[0..1]	Text		126
	LinkFileHash <LkFileHash>	[0..1]	(External Schema)		126
	AttachedBinaryFile <AttchdBinryFile>	[1..1]			127
	MIMEType <MIMEp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	EncodingType <NcodgTp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	CharacterSet <CharSet>	[0..1]	Text		127
	IncludedBinaryObject <InclBinryObjct>	[0..1]	Binary		127

### 12.1.7.6 SupportingDocument3

*Definition:* Currency control document supporting the contract registration.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SupportingDocumentIdentification <SpprtgDocId>	[1..1]	Text		148
	OriginalRequestIdentification <OrgnlReqId>	[0..1]	Text		148
	Certificate <Cert>	[1..1]	±		148
	AccountOwner <AcctOwnr>	[1..1]	±		148
	AccountServicer <AcctSvcr>	[1..1]	±		148
	Amendment <Amdmnt>	[0..1]			149
	CorrectionIdentification <CrrctnId>	[1..1]	Quantity		149
	OriginalDocumentIdentification <OrgnlDocId>	[0..1]	Text		149
	ContractReference <CtrctRef>	[1..1]			149
{Or	RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>	[1..1]	Text		149
Or}	Contract <Ctrct>	[1..1]	±		150
	Entry <Ntry>	[1..*]			150
	EntryIdentification <NtryId>	[1..1]	Text		151
	OriginalDocument <OrgnlDoc>	[1..1]	±		151
	DocumentType <DocTp>	[1..1]	Text		152
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	152
	TotalAmountAfterShipment <TtlAmtAfrShpmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	152
	TotalAmountInContractCurrency <TtlAmtInCtrctCcy>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	153
	TotalAmountAfterShipmentInContractCurrency <TtlAmtAfrShpmtInCtrctCcy>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	153
	ShipmentAttributes <ShpmtAttrbts>	[1..1]			153
	Conditions <Conds>	[0..1]			154
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		154
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[0..1]	Date		154
	CountryOfCounterParty <CtryOfCntrPty>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	154
	EntryAmendmentIdentification <NtryAmdmntId>	[0..1]			155
	CorrectingEntryNumber <CrrctgNtryNb>	[1..1]	Quantity		155
	OriginalDocument <OrgnlDoc>	[1..1]	±		155
	MaturityData <MtrtyData>	[0..1]	Text		155
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		155
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		155

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C7	156

#### 12.1.7.6.1 SupportingDocumentIdentification <SpprtgDocId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the supporting document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.7.6.2 OriginalRequestIdentification <OrgnlReqlD>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of the original query message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.7.6.3 Certificate <Cert>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of the certificate for which the supporting document is provided.

**Certificate <Cert>** contains the following elements (see "DocumentIdentification28" on page 164 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		164
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIsse>	[1..1]	Date		165

#### 12.1.7.6.4 AccountOwner <AcctOwnr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that legally owns the cash account.

**AccountOwner <AcctOwnr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 173 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		175
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	175
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		176

#### 12.1.7.6.5 AccountServicer <AcctSvcr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that manages the account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

**AccountServicer <AcctSvcr>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

#### 12.1.7.6.6 Amendment <Amdmnt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amendment indicator details.

**Amendment <Amdmnt>** contains the following **DocumentAmendment1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CorrectionIdentification <CrrctnId>	[1..1]	Quantity		149
	OriginalDocumentIdentification <OrgnIDocId>	[0..1]	Text		149

##### 12.1.7.6.6.1 CorrectionIdentification <CrrctnId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the correction sequence number used to identify the amendment.

*Datatype:* "[Number](#)" on page 259

##### 12.1.7.6.6.2 OriginalDocumentIdentification <OrgnIDocId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the original document being amended.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 262

##### 12.1.7.6.7 ContractReference <CtrctRef>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference of the registered contract or the underlying contract for the supporting documents.

**ContractReference <CtrctRef>** contains one of the following **ContractRegistrationReference2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>	[1..1]	Text		149
Or}	Contract <Ctrct>	[1..1]	±		150

##### 12.1.7.6.7.1 RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the registered contract.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.7.6.7.2 Contract <Ctrct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the contract.

**Contract <Ctrct>** contains the following elements (see "[DocumentIdentification35](#)" on page 127 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		128
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIsse>	[0..1]	Date		128

#### 12.1.7.6.8 Entry <Ntry>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Individual entry of the supporting document.

**Entry <Ntry>** contains the following **SupportingDocumentEntry2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EntryIdentification <NtryId>	[1..1]	Text		151
	OriginalDocument <OrgnIDoc>	[1..1]	±		151
	DocumentType <DocTp>	[1..1]	Text		152
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	152
	TotalAmountAfterShipment <TtlAmtAfrShipmnt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	152
	TotalAmountInContractCurrency <TtlAmtInCtrctCcy>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	153
	TotalAmountAfterShipmentInContractCurrency <TtlAmtAfrShipmntInCtrctCcy>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	153
	ShipmentAttributes <ShipmntAttrbts>	[1..1]			153
	Conditions <Cnds>	[0..1]			154
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		154
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[0..1]	Date		154
	CountryOfCounterParty <CtrtyOfCntrPty>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	154
	EntryAmendmentIdentification <NtryAmdmntId>	[0..1]			155
	CorrectingEntryNumber <CrrctgNtryNb>	[1..1]	Quantity		155
	OriginalDocument <OrgnIDoc>	[1..1]	±		155
	MaturityData <MtrtyData>	[0..1]	Text		155
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		155
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		155

#### 12.1.7.6.8.1 EntryIdentification <NtryId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the supporting document entry.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.7.6.8.2 OriginalDocument <OrgnIDoc>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the original document for which the supporting documents are provided.

**OriginalDocument <OrgnIDoc>** contains the following elements (see "[DocumentIdentification22](#)" on page 165 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		165
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIssse>	[0..1]	Date		165

#### 12.1.7.6.8.3 DocumentType <DocTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Document type in a coded form.

TBC: Data must support "\_".

*Datatype:* "[Exact4AlphaNumericUnderscoreText](#)" on page 260

#### 12.1.7.6.8.4 TotalAmount <TtlAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of the supporting document entry.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C5 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 242

##### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 12.1.7.6.8.5 TotalAmountAfterShipment <TtlAmtAftrShipmnt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount after shipment of the supporting document entry.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C5 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 242

##### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217

Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 12.1.7.6.8.6 TotalAmountInContractCurrency <TtlAmtInCtrctCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount of the supporting document entry in the currency of the contract.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 242

##### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 12.1.7.6.8.7 TotalAmountAfterShipmentInContractCurrency <TtlAmtAftrShipmntInCtrctCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Total amount after shipment of the supporting document entry in the currency of the contract.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 242

##### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 12.1.7.6.8.8 ShipmentAttributes <ShipmntAttrbts>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Conditions and attributes related to the shipment.

**ShipmentAttributes <ShpmtAttrbts>** contains the following **ShipmentAttribute2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Conditions <Cnds>	[0..1]			154
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		154
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[0..1]	Date		154
	CountryOfCounterParty <CtryOfCntrPty>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	154

#### 12.1.7.6.8.8.1 Conditions <Cnds>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Shipment conditions.

**Conditions <Cnds>** contains one of the following **ShipmentCondition1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		154

##### 12.1.7.6.8.8.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Shipment conditions expressed as an ISO 20022 code.

*Datatype:* "ExternalShipmentCondition1Code" on page 250

##### 12.1.7.6.8.8.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Shipment conditions expressed as a proprietary code.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

##### 12.1.7.6.8.8.2 ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Expected shipment date.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

##### 12.1.7.6.8.8.3 CountryOfCounterParty <CtryOfCntrPty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Country in which the counter party is located.

*Impacted by:* C4 "Country"

*Datatype:* "CountryCode" on page 246

**Constraints**

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**12.1.7.6.8.9 EntryAmendmentIdentification <NtryAmdmntld>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the document entry amendment.

**EntryAmendmentIdentification <NtryAmdmntld>** contains the following **DocumentEntryAmendment1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CorrectingEntryNumber <CrrctgNtryNb>	[1..1]	Quantity		155
	OriginalDocument <OrgnIDoc>	[1..1]	±		155

**12.1.7.6.8.9.1 CorrectingEntryNumber <CrrctgNtryNb>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Number of correcting entry.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 259

**12.1.7.6.8.9.2 OriginalDocument <OrgnIDoc>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Data related to an original document.

**OriginalDocument <OrgnIDoc>** contains the following elements (see "[DocumentIdentification28](#)" on page 164 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		164
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIssse>	[1..1]	Date		165

**12.1.7.6.8.10 MaturityData <MtrtyData>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indication of contract obligations execution.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.7.6.8.11 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details on the supporting document entry.

*Datatype:* "Max500Text" on page 263

**12.1.7.6.8.12 Attachment <Attchmnt>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Documents provided as attachments to the supporting document entry.

**Attachment <Attchmnt>** contains the following elements (see "[DocumentGeneralInformation5](#)" on page 125 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DocumentType <DocTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		126
	DocumentNumber <DocNb>	[1..1]	Text		126
	DocumentName <DocNm>	[0..1]	Text		126
	SenderReceiverSequenceIdentification <SndrRcvrSeqId>	[0..1]	Text		126
	IssueDate <IsseDt>	[0..1]	Date		126
	URL <URL>	[0..1]	Text		126
	LinkFileHash <LkFileHash>	[0..1]	(External Schema)		126
	AttachedBinaryFile <AttchdBinryFile>	[1..1]			127
	MIMEType <MIMETp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	EncodingType <NcodgTp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	CharacterSet <CharSet>	[0..1]	Text		127
	IncludedBinaryObject <InclBinryObjct>	[0..1]	Binary		127

#### 12.1.7.6.9 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C7 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

**Constraints**

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 12.1.8 Financial Institution Identification

### 12.1.8.1 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by a clearing system, to unambiguously identify a member of the clearing system.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]	±		157
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		157

#### 12.1.8.1.1 ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specification of a pre-agreed offering between clearing agents or the channel through which the payment instruction is processed.

**ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>** contains one of the following elements (see "[ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice](#)" on page 238 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		238
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		239

#### 12.1.8.1.2 MemberIdentification <Mmbld>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a member of a clearing system.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 262

#### 12.1.8.2 FinancialInstitutionIdentification18

*Definition:* Specifies the details to identify a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	158
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		158
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		158
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		158
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		159
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		159

### 12.1.8.2.1 BICFI <BICFI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Impacted by:* C3 "BICFI"

*Datatype:* "BICFIDec2014Identifier" on page 257

#### Constraints

- **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### 12.1.8.2.2 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information used to identify a member within a clearing system.

**ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>** contains the following elements (see "ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2" on page 157 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]	±		157
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		157

### 12.1.8.2.3 LEI <LEI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity identifier of the financial institution.

*Datatype:* "LEIIdentifier" on page 258

### 12.1.8.2.4 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 261

**12.1.8.2.5 PostalAddress <PstAdr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.**PostalAddress <PstAdr>** contains the following elements (see "[PostalAddress24](#)" on page 187 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			187
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		188
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		188
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		188
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		189
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		189
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		189
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		189
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	190
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		190

**12.1.8.2.6 Other <Othr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Unique identification of an agent, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericFinancialIdentification1](#)" on page 162 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		162
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			163
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		163
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		163
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		163

### 12.1.8.3 BranchData3

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		160
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		160
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		160
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		160

#### 12.1.8.3.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a branch of a financial institution.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 262

#### 12.1.8.3.2 LEI <LEI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity identification for the branch of the financial institution.

*Datatype:* "[LEIIdentifier](#)" on page 258

#### 12.1.8.3.3 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 261

#### 12.1.8.3.4 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

**PostalAddress <PstAdr>** contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress24" on page 187 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			187
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		188
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		188
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		188
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		189
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		189
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		189
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		189
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	190
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		190

#### 12.1.8.4 BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution or a branch of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

##### 12.1.8.4.1 FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution, as assigned under an internationally recognised or proprietary identification scheme.

**FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>** contains the following elements (see "FinancialInstitutionIdentification18" on page 157 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	158
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		158
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		158
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		158
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		159
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		159

#### 12.1.8.4.2 BranchIdentification <BrnchId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

*Usage:* This component should be used in case the identification information in the financial institution component does not provide identification up to branch level.

**BranchIdentification <BrnchId>** contains the following elements (see "BranchData3" on page 160 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		160
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		160
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		160
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		160

#### 12.1.8.5 GenericFinancialIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to an identification of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		162
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			163
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		163
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		163
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		163

##### 12.1.8.5.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

### 12.1.8.5.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **FinancialIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		163
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		163

#### 12.1.8.5.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code" on page 249

#### 12.1.8.5.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

### 12.1.8.5.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

## 12.1.9 Identification Information

### 12.1.9.1 GenericIdentification30

*Definition:* Information related to an identification, for example, party identification or account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		163
	Issuer <Issr>	[1..1]	Text		164
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		164

#### 12.1.9.1.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary information, often a code, issued by the data source scheme issuer.

*Datatype:* "Exact4AlphaNumericText" on page 260

### 12.1.9.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

### 12.1.9.1.3 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Short textual description of the scheme.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

### 12.1.9.2 DocumentIdentification29

*Definition:* Identifies a document by a unique identification and a date of issue.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		164
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIssse>	[1..1]	Date		164

#### 12.1.9.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.9.2.2 DateOfIssue <DtOfIssse>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date of issuance of the document.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

### 12.1.9.3 DocumentIdentification28

*Definition:* Identifies a document by a unique identification and a date of issue.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		164
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIssse>	[1..1]	Date		165

#### 12.1.9.3.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.9.3.2 DateOfIssue <DtOfIssse>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date of issuance of the document.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

**12.1.9.4 DocumentIdentification22**

*Definition:* Identifies a document by a unique identification and a date of issue.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		165
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIssse>	[0..1]	Date		165

**12.1.9.4.1 Identification <Id>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.9.4.2 DateOfIssue <DtOfIssse>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date of issuance of the document.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

**12.1.10 Loan****12.1.10.1 LoanContractTranche1**

*Definition:* Provides details on the tranches defined for the loan contract.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TrancheNumber <TrchNb>	[1..1]	Quantity		165
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[1..1]	Date		166
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	166
	DueDate <DueDt>	[0..1]	Date		166
	DurationCode <DrtnCd>	[0..1]	Text		166
	LastTrancheIndicator <LastTrchInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		166

**12.1.10.1.1 TrancheNumber <TrchNb>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique sequence number of the tranche.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 259

**12.1.10.1.2 ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Expected tranche payment date.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

**12.1.10.1.3 Amount <Amt>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount of the tranche as defined in the loan contract.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 242

**Constraints**

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**12.1.10.1.4 DueDate <DueDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Loan tranche due date.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

**12.1.10.1.5 DurationCode <DrtnCd>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Loan tranche duration in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "Exact1NumericText" on page 260

**12.1.10.1.6 LastTrancheIndicator <LastTrchInd>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether this tranche is the last tranche of the full report.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "YesNoIndicator" on page 258):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

## 12.1.11 Miscellaneous

### 12.1.11.1 SupplementaryData1

*Definition:* Additional information that can not be captured in the structured fields and/or any other specific block.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

#### 12.1.11.1.1 PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous reference to the location where the supplementary data must be inserted in the message instance.

In the case of XML, this is expressed by a valid XPath.

*Datatype:* "Max350Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.11.1.2 Envelope <Envlp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Technical element wrapping the supplementary data.

*Type:* (External Schema)

Technical component that contains the validated supplementary data information. This technical envelope allows to segregate the supplementary data information from any other information.

#### 12.1.11.2 InterestPaymentSchedule1

*Definition:* Specifies an interest payment schedule, that is an amount that must be paid no sooner than the expected payment date and no later than the due date.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InterestScheduleIdentification <IntrstSchdId>	[0..1]	Text		168
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	168
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[0..1]	Date		168
	DueDate <DueDt>	[0..1]	Date		168
	AdditionalInformation <AddtInf>	[0..1]	Text		168

**Constraints**

- **InterestSchedulePresenceRule**

At least on element must be present in the InterestPaymentSchedule.

Following Must be True

```

/InterestScheduleIdentification Must be present
Or    /Amount Must be present
Or    /ExpectedDate Must be present
Or    /DueDate Must be present
Or    /AdditionalInformation Must be present

```

**12.1.11.2.1 InterestScheduleIdentification <IntrstSchdIld>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the interest payment schedule.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.11.2.2 Amount <Amt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Interest amount that must be paid at due date.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 242

**Constraints**

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**12.1.11.2.3 ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Expected interest payment date.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

**12.1.11.2.4 DueDate <DueDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Latest date whereby the interest must be paid.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

**12.1.11.2.5 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details on the interest payments.

*Datatype:* ["Max1025Text" on page 260](#)

### 12.1.11.3 TaxParty4

*Definition:* Details about the entity involved in the tax paid or to be paid.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		169
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		169
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		169
	TaxExemptionReason <TaxXmptnRsn>	[0..*]	±		169

#### 12.1.11.3.1 TaxIdentification <TaxId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number assigned by a tax authority to an entity.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 262](#)

#### 12.1.11.3.2 TaxType <TaxTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of tax payer.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 262](#)

#### 12.1.11.3.3 RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 262](#)

#### 12.1.11.3.4 TaxExemptionReason <TaxXmptnRsn>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Specification of the tax exemption reason.

**TaxExemptionReason <TaxXmptnRsn>** contains one of the following elements (see ["TaxExemptionReasonFormat1Choice" on page 239](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Unstructured <Ustrd>	[1..1]	Text		239
Or}	Structured <Strd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		239

#### 12.1.11.4 GenericValidationRuleIdentification1

*Definition:* Information for the identification of a validation rule.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		170
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		170
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	±		170
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		170

#### 12.1.11.4.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a validation rule.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.11.4.2 Description <Desc>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further information on the validation rule as identified in the Identification.

*Datatype:* "Max350Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.11.4.3 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following elements (see "ValidationRuleSchemeName1Choice" on page 170 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		171
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		171

#### 12.1.11.4.4 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.11.5 ValidationRuleSchemeName1Choice

*Definition:* Identifies a name of the identification scheme.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		171
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		171

**12.1.11.5.1 Code <Cd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.*Datatype:* "ExternalValidationRuleIdentification1Code" on page 250**12.1.11.5.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262**12.1.12 Organisation Identification****12.1.12.1 OrganisationIdentification29***Definition:* Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C2	171
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		171
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			172
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		172
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			172
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		172
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		172
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		173

**12.1.12.1.1 AnyBIC <AnyBIC>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Business identification code of the organisation.*Impacted by:* C2 "AnyBIC"*Datatype:* "AnyBICDec2014Identifier" on page 256**Constraints**

- **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**12.1.12.1.2 LEI <LEI>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Legal entity identification as an alternate identification for a party.

*Datatype:* ["LEIdentifier" on page 258](#)

### 12.1.12.1.3 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Unique identification of an organisation, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following **GenericOrganisationIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		172
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			172
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		172
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		172
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		173

#### 12.1.12.1.3.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by an institution.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 262](#)

#### 12.1.12.1.3.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **OrganisationIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		172
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		172

#### 12.1.12.1.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code" on page 249](#)

#### 12.1.12.1.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 262](#)

**12.1.12.1.3.3 Issuer <Issr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.12.2 LegalOrganisation2**

*Definition:* Legally constituted organization specified for this party.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		173
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		173
	EstablishmentDate <EstblishmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		173
	RegistrationDate <RegnDt>	[0..1]	Date		173

**12.1.12.2.1 Identification <Id>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identifier for an organisation that is allocated by an institution.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.12.2.2 Name <Nm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the short name of the organisation.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 261

**12.1.12.2.3 EstablishmentDate <EstblishmtDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date when the organisation was established.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

**12.1.12.2.4 RegistrationDate <RegnDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date when the organisation was registered.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

**12.1.13 Party Identification****12.1.13.1 PartyIdentification135**

*Definition:* Specifies the identification of a person or an organisation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		175
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	175
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		176

#### 12.1.13.1.1 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 261

#### 12.1.13.1.2 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

**PostalAddress <PstAdr>** contains the following elements (see "[PostalAddress24](#)" on page 187 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			187
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		188
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		188
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		188
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		189
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		189
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		189
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		189
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	190
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		190

#### 12.1.13.1.3 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a party.

**Identification <Id>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Party38Choice](#)" on page 177 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]	±		178
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]	±		178

#### 12.1.13.1.4 CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Country in which a person resides (the place of a person's home). In the case of a company, it is the country from which the affairs of that company are directed.

Impacted by: C4 "Country"

Datatype: "CountryCode" on page 246

#### Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

#### 12.1.13.1.5 ContactDetails <CtctDtls>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to indicate how to contact the party.

ContactDetails <CtctDtls> contains the following elements (see "Contact4" on page 184 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		184
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		185
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		185
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		185
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		185
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		185
	EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>	[0..1]	Text		185
	JobTitle <JobTitl>	[0..1]	Text		185
	Responsibility <Rspnsblty>	[0..1]	Text		186
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		186
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			186
	ChannelType <ChanlTp>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		186
	PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186

#### 12.1.13.2 TradeParty5

Definition: Specifies an entity involved in a trade activity.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PartyIdentification <PtyId>	[1..1]	±		177
	LegalOrganisation <LglOrg>	[0..1]	±		177
	TaxParty <TaxPty>	[0..*]	±		177

**12.1.13.2.1 PartyIdentification <PtyId>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.**PartyIdentification <PtyId>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 173 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		175
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	175
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		176

**12.1.13.2.2 LegalOrganisation <LglOrg>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Legally constituted organization specified for this trade party.**LegalOrganisation <LglOrg>** contains the following elements (see "[LegalOrganisation2](#)" on page 173 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		173
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		173
	EstablishmentDate <EstblishmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		173
	RegistrationDate <RegnDt>	[0..1]	Date		173

**12.1.13.2.3 TaxParty <TaxPty>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Further tax details of an entity involved in an activity which is subject to taxation.**TaxParty <TaxPty>** contains the following elements (see "[TaxParty4](#)" on page 169 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		169
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		169
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		169
	TaxExemptionReason <TaxXmptnRsn>	[0..*]	±		169

**12.1.13.3 Party38Choice***Definition:* Nature or use of the account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <Orgld>	[1..1]	±		178
Or}	Privateldentification <Prvtld>	[1..1]	±		178

### 12.1.13.3.1 OrganisationIdentification <Orgld>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

**OrganisationIdentification <Orgld>** contains the following elements (see "[OrganisationIdentification29](#)" on page 171 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C2	171
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		171
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			172
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		172
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			172
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		172
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		172
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		173

### 12.1.13.3.2 Privateldentification <Prvtld>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person, for example a passport.

**PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>** contains the following elements (see "[PersonIdentification13](#)" on page 181 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			182
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		182
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		182
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		182
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C4	183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184

#### 12.1.13.4 Party40Choice

*Definition:* Identification of a person, an organisation or a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		179
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		179

##### 12.1.13.4.1 Party <Pty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a person or an organisation.

**Party <Pty>** contains the following elements (see "[PartyIdentification135](#)" on page 173 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		175
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	175
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		176

##### 12.1.13.4.2 Agent <Agt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a financial institution.

**Agent <Agt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

## 12.1.14 Payment

### 12.1.14.1 PaymentSchedule1

*Definition:* Specifies an payment schedule, that is an amount that must be paid no sooner than the expected payment date and no later than the due date.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PaymentScheduleIdentification <PmtSchdId>	[0..1]	Text		180
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	180
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[0..1]	Date		181
	DueDate <DueDt>	[0..1]	Date		181
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		181

#### Constraints

- **PaymentScheduleItemRule**

At least on element must be present in PaymentSchedule.

Following Must be True

```

/PaymentScheduleIdentification Must be present
Or    /Amount Must be present
Or    /ExpectedDate Must be present
Or    /DueDate Must be present
Or    /AdditionalInformation Must be present

```

#### 12.1.14.1.1 PaymentScheduleIdentification <PmtSchdId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the payment schedule.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 262

#### 12.1.14.1.2 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount that must be paid no sooner than the expected payment date and no later than the due date.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C5 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 242

**Constraints****• ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**• CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**12.1.14.1.3 ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Expected date whereby the amount must be paid.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

**12.1.14.1.4 DueDate <DueDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Latest date whereby the amount of money must be paid.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

**12.1.14.1.5 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details on the payments.

*Datatype:* "Max1025Text" on page 260

**12.1.15 Person Identification****12.1.15.1 PersonIdentification13**

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous way to identify a person.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			182
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		182
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		182
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		182
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C4	183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184

#### 12.1.15.1.1 DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and place of birth of a person.

**DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>** contains the following **DateAndPlaceOfBirth1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		182
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		182
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		182
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C4	183

##### 12.1.15.1.1.1 BirthDate <BirthDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date on which a person is born.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

##### 12.1.15.1.1.2 ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Province where a person was born.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

##### 12.1.15.1.1.3 CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* City where a person was born.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.15.1.1.4 CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Country where a person was born.

*Impacted by:* C4 "Country"

*Datatype:* "CountryCode" on page 246

#### Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

#### 12.1.15.1.2 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Unique identification of a person, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following **GenericPersonIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184

#### 12.1.15.1.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.15.1.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **PersonIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184

**12.1.15.1.2.2.1 Code <Cd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.*Datatype:* "ExternalPersonIdentification1Code" on page 249**12.1.15.1.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262**12.1.15.1.2.3 Issuer <Issr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262**12.1.15.2 Contact4***Definition:* Specifies the details of the contact person.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		184
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		185
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		185
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		185
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		185
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		185
	EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>	[0..1]	Text		185
	JobTitle <JobTitl>	[0..1]	Text		185
	Responsibility <Rspnsblty>	[0..1]	Text		186
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		186
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			186
	ChannelType <ChanlTp>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		186
	PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186

**12.1.15.2.1 NamePrefix <NmPrfx>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.*Datatype:* "NamePrefix2Code" on page 251

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

#### 12.1.15.2.2 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 261

#### 12.1.15.2.3 PhoneNumber <PhneNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collection of information that identifies a phone number, as defined by telecom services.

*Datatype:* "PhoneNumber" on page 263

#### 12.1.15.2.4 MobileNumber <MobNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collection of information that identifies a mobile phone number, as defined by telecom services.

*Datatype:* "PhoneNumber" on page 263

#### 12.1.15.2.5 FaxNumber <FaxNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collection of information that identifies a FAX number, as defined by telecom services.

*Datatype:* "PhoneNumber" on page 263

#### 12.1.15.2.6 EmailAddress <EmailAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Address for electronic mail (e-mail).

*Datatype:* "Max2048Text" on page 261

#### 12.1.15.2.7 EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Purpose for which an email address may be used.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.15.2.8 JobTitle <JobTitl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Title of the function.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

### 12.1.15.2.9 Responsibility <Rspnsblty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Role of a person in an organisation.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

### 12.1.15.2.10 Department <Dept>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 263

### 12.1.15.2.11 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Contact details in another form.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following **OtherContact1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ChannelType <ChanITp>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		186

#### 12.1.15.2.11.1 ChannelType <ChanITp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Method used to contact the financial institution's contact for the specific tax region.

*Datatype:* "Max4Text" on page 263

#### 12.1.15.2.11.2 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Communication value such as phone number or email address.

*Datatype:* "Max128Text" on page 261

#### 12.1.15.2.12 PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Preferred method used to reach the contact.

*Datatype:* "PreferredContactMethod1Code" on page 251

CodeName	Name	Definition
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.

CodeName	Name	Definition
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.

## 12.1.16 Postal Address

### 12.1.16.1 PostalAddress24

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			187
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		188
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		188
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		188
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		189
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		189
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		189
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		189
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		190
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C4	190
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		190

#### 12.1.16.1.1 AddressType <AdrTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the nature of the postal address.

**AddressType <AdrTp>** contains one of the following **AddressType3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		188
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		188

#### 12.1.16.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of address expressed as a code.

*Datatype:* "AddressType2Code" on page 244

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

#### 12.1.16.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of address expressed as a proprietary code.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 163 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		163
	Issuer <Issr>	[1..1]	Text		164
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		164

#### 12.1.16.1.2 Department <Dept>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 263

#### 12.1.16.1.3 SubDepartment <SubDept>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a sub-division of a large organisation or building.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 263

**12.1.16.1.4 StreetName <StrtNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of a street or thoroughfare.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 263

**12.1.16.1.5 BuildingNumber <BldgNb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number that identifies the position of a building on a street.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 261

**12.1.16.1.6 BuildingName <BldgNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the building or house.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.16.1.7 Floor <Flr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Floor or storey within a building.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 263

**12.1.16.1.8 PostBox <PstBx>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Numbered box in a post office, assigned to a person or organisation, where letters are kept until called for.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 261

**12.1.16.1.9 Room <Room>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Building room number.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 263

**12.1.16.1.10 PostCode <PstCd>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifier consisting of a group of letters and/or numbers that is added to a postal address to assist the sorting of mail.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 261

**12.1.16.1.11 TownName <TwnNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of a built-up area, with defined boundaries, and a local government.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.16.1.12 TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specific location name within the town.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.16.1.13 DistrictName <DstrctNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a subdivision within a country sub-division.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.16.1.14 CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a subdivision of a country such as state, region, county.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.16.1.15 Country <Ctry>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Nation with its own government.

*Impacted by:* C4 "Country"

*Datatype:* "CountryCode" on page 246

**Constraints**

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**12.1.16.1.16 AddressLine <AdrLine>**

*Presence:* [0..7]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services, presented in free format text.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 263

**12.1.17 Rate****12.1.17.1 InterestRate2Choice**

*Definition:* Choice between a fixed rate and a floating rate.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Fixed <Fxd>	[1..1]	Rate		191
Or}	Floating <Fltg>	[1..1]			191
	ReferenceRate <RefRate>	[1..1]			191
{Or	ISIN <ISIN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet		192
Or	Index <Indx>	[1..1]	CodeSet		192
Or}	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		194
	Term <Term>	[1..1]			194
	Unit <Unit>	[1..1]	CodeSet		194
	Value <Val>	[1..1]	Quantity		194
	BasisPointSpread <BsisPtSprd>	[1..1]	Quantity		195

#### 12.1.17.1.1 Fixed <Fxd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates that the rate is fixed.

*Datatype:* "PercentageRate" on page 259

#### 12.1.17.1.2 Floating <Fltg>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides details about the variable rate.

**Floating <Fltg>** contains the following **FloatingInterestRate4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ReferenceRate <RefRate>	[1..1]			191
{Or	ISIN <ISIN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet		192
Or	Index <Indx>	[1..1]	CodeSet		192
Or}	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		194
	Term <Term>	[1..1]			194
	Unit <Unit>	[1..1]	CodeSet		194
	Value <Val>	[1..1]	Quantity		194
	BasisPointSpread <BsisPtSprd>	[1..1]	Quantity		195

#### 12.1.17.1.2.1 ReferenceRate <RefRate>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the reference index for the debt instrument.

## Usage:

Where an identifier exists, the ISIN must be used; otherwise, names will be necessary (such as EURIBOR6M, LIBOR3M) as other identification.

**ReferenceRate <RefRate>** contains one of the following **BenchmarkCurveName4Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	ISIN <ISIN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet		192
Or	Index <Indx>	[1..1]	CodeSet		192
Or}	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		194

**12.1.17.1.2.1.1 ISIN <ISIN>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* International Securities Identification Number (ISIN), when it exists for the reference rate.

*Datatype:* ["ISINOct2015Identifier" on page 258](#)

**12.1.17.1.2.1.2 Index <Indx>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identifier of the index/benchmark of a floating rate bond, when an identifier exists.

*Datatype:* ["BenchmarkCurveName2Code" on page 244](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
WIBO	WIBOR	Warsaw Interbank Offered Rate.
TREA	Treasury	Treasury benchmark that comes in three types: the yield curve, the par curve, and the spot curve. All curves also have a constituent time series.
TIBO	TIBOR	Tokyo Interbank Offered Rate.
TLBO	TELBOR	Tel Aviv Interbank Offered Rate.
SWAP	SWAP	In curve construction, Swap is the long portion of the curve constituting about 3 years to 30 years term.  The exchange of one security, currency or interest rate for another to change the maturity (bonds), or quality of issues (stocks or bonds), or because investment objectives have changed.
STBO	STIBOR	Stockholm Interbank Offered Rate.
PRBO	PRIBOR	Czech Fixing of Interest Rates on Interbank Deposits.
PFAN	Pfandbriefe	Pfandbriefe security is a collateralised bullet bond backed by either mortgage loans or loans to the public sector. Pfandbriefe differ from traditional asset-backed securities in significant ways. The most important difference is that Pfandbriefe carry no pre-payment risk since they remain on the balance sheet

CodeName	Name	Definition
		of the issuing institution. Therefore, their spreads over sovereign bonds are attributable to liquidity and credit quality alone. New indices have been created and existing indices have been modified in response to the growing importance of the Pfandbriefe market. The Deutsche Borse has three synthetic indices called REX, JEX, and PEX. The Pfandbriefe curve is used as a reference for credit as well as mortgage market.
NIBO	NIBOR	Norwegian Interbank Offered Rate.
MAAA	MuniAAA	Benchmark curve used for municipals based on the best credit rating for municipal market debt.
MOSP	MOSPRIM	Moscow Prime Offered Rate.
LIBO	LIBOR	London Interbank Offered Rate, the interest rate that major international banks in London charge each other for borrowing.
LIBI	LIBID	Rate at which major international banks are willing to take deposits from one another, is normally 1/8 percent below LIBOR.  London InterBank Bid Rate, the rate bid by banks on Eurocurrency deposits; the international rate that banks lend to other banks.
JIBA	JIBAR	Johannesburg Interbank Agreed Rate.
ISDA	ISDAFIX	Worldwide common reference rate value for fixed interest rate swap rates, as defined by the International Swaps and Derivatives Association (ISDA).
GCFR	GCFRepo	GCF Repo Index, the Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation (DTCC) general collateral finance repurchase agreements index.
FUSW	FutureSWAP	Portion of a synthetic curve that is composed of Eurodollar or Treasury or similar Futures and Swap rates. The term usually begins at 3 months to 2 years for the futures strip component with the Swaps filling in the points to 10 years and beyond.
EUCH	EuroSwiss	Swiss Franc LIBOR rate.
EUUS	EURODOLLAR	Rate for the eurodollars, time deposits denominated in U.S. dollars at banks outside the United States, and thus are not under the jurisdiction of the Federal Reserve.
EURI	Euribor	Euro Interbank Offer Rate is the rate at which Euro inter-bank term deposits

CodeName	Name	Definition
		within the Euro zone are offered by one prime bank to another prime bank.
EONS	EONIASwaps	Euro OverNight Index Average swap rate.
EONA	EONIA	Euro OverNight Index Average rate.
CIBO	CIBOR	Copenhagen Interbank Offered Rate.
CDOR	CDOR	Canadian Dollar Offered Rate.
BUBO	BUBOR	Budapest Interbank Offered Rate.
BBSW	BBSW	Australian Financial Markets Association (AFMA) Bank-Bill Reference Rate (BBSW).

### 12.1.17.1.2.1.3 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Where no identifier exists, standardized name of the index, including its term (such as 'EURIBOR6M', 'LIBOR3M').

*Datatype:* "Max25Text" on page 262

### 12.1.17.1.2.2 Term <Term>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Term of the index.

**Term <Term>** contains the following **InterestRateContractTerm1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Unit <Unit>	[1..1]	CodeSet		194
	Value <Val/>	[1..1]	Quantity		194

### 12.1.17.1.2.2.1 Unit <Unit>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unit for the rate basis.

*Datatype:* "RateBasis1Code" on page 252

CodeName	Name	Definition
DAYS	Days	Rate is reported in days.
MNTH	Months	Rate is reported in months.
WEEK	Weeks	Rate is reported in weeks.
YEAR	Years	Rate is reported in years.

### 12.1.17.1.2.2.2 Value <Val>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Value of the contract term in number of units.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 259

### 12.1.17.1.2.3 BasisPointSpread <BsisPtSprd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the number of basis points added to (if positive) or deducted from (if negative) the underlying reference rate to calculate the actual interest rate applicable for a given period at issuance of the floating rate instrument.

Used to express differences in interest rates, for example, a difference of 0.10% is equivalent to a change of 10 basis points.

*Datatype:* "Number" on page 259

## 12.1.18 Regulatory Reporting

### 12.1.18.1 RegisteredContractJournal2

*Definition:* Document that a user must file with an authorised servicer for each contract that involves foreign currency transactions with non residents.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		195
	Uniquelidentification <UnqlId>	[0..1]	±		195
	ClosureDate <ClsrDt>	[1..1]	Date		196
	ClosureReason <ClsrRsn>	[1..1]			196
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		196
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		196

#### 12.1.18.1.1 RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Agent which registers the currency control contract.

**RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

#### 12.1.18.1.2 Uniquelidentification <UnqlId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique registered contract identification.

**UniquelIdentification <UnqlId>** contains the following elements (see "[DocumentIdentification28](#)" on page 164 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		164
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIssse>	[1..1]	Date		165

### 12.1.18.1.3 ClosureDate <ClsrDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date of closure of the registered contract.

*Datatype:* "[ISODate](#)" on page 256

### 12.1.18.1.4 ClosureReason <ClsrRsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason of closure.

**ClosureReason <ClsrRsn>** contains one of the following **ContractClosureReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		196
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		196

#### 12.1.18.1.4.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalContractClosureReason1Code](#)" on page 248

#### 12.1.18.1.4.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason in a proprietary format.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 262

### 12.1.18.2 RegisteredContractAmendment1

*Definition:* Amendment details and reason related to the registered contract.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AmendmentDate <AmdmntDt>	[1..1]	Date		197
	Document <Doc>	[1..1]	±		197
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		197
	AmendmentReason <AmdmntRsn>	[0..1]	Text		197
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		197

**12.1.18.2.1 AmendmentDate <AmdmntDt>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date of the amendment of the registered contract.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

**12.1.18.2.2 Document <Doc>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference of the amendment document.

**Document <Doc>** contains the following elements (see "DocumentIdentification28" on page 164 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		164
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIssse>	[1..1]	Date		165

**12.1.18.2.3 StartDate <StartDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date from which the amendment is applicable.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

**12.1.18.2.4 AmendmentReason <AmdmntRsn>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the amendment.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.18.2.5 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details on the amendment.

*Datatype:* "Max1025Text" on page 260

**12.1.18.3 RegisteredContractCommunication1**

*Definition:* Communication details related to the registered currency control contract.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Method <Mtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		197
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		198

**12.1.18.3.1 Method <Mtd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Method by which the registered contract document is exchanged.

*Datatype:* "CommunicationMethod4Code" on page 246

CodeName	Name	Definition
EMAL	Email	Transmission by e-mail.
FAXI	Fax	Transmission by fax.
FILE	File	Transmission by file transfer.
ONLI	Online	Transmission on line, for example, in a web portal.
PHON	Phone	Transmission by telephone.
POST	PostalService	Transmission by postal service.
PROP	Proprietary	Transmission by proprietary method.
SWMT	SWIFTMT	Transmission by Swift (FIN).
SWMX	SWIFTMX	Transmission by SWIFTNET.

### 12.1.18.3.2 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date of the exchange.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

### 12.1.18.4 TransactionCertificateContract2

*Definition:* Certificate and contract reference of a transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ContractReference <CtrctRef>	[0..1]			199
{Or	RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>	[1..1]	Text		199
Or}	Contract <Ctrct>	[1..1]	±		199
	TransactionAmountInContractCurrency <TxAmtInCtrctCcy>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	199
	ExpectedShipmentDate <XpctdShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		200
	ExpectedAdvancePaymentReturnDate <XpctdAdvncPmtRtrDt>	[0..1]	Date		200
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		200

#### Constraints

- **TransactionAmountInContractCurrencyPresenceRule**

If ContractReference/RegisteredContractIdentification is absent then TransactionAmountInContractCurrency must be absent.

On Condition

/ContractReference/RegisteredContractIdentification is absent

Following Must be True  
/TransactionAmountInContractCurrency Must be absent

#### 12.1.18.4.1 ContractReference <CtrctRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference of the contract provided as through the date and identification of the contract or through the registered contract identification.

**ContractReference <CtrctRef>** contains one of the following **ContractRegistrationReference2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>	[1..1]	Text		199
Or}	Contract <Ctrct>	[1..1]	±		199

##### 12.1.18.4.1.1 RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the registered contract.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

##### 12.1.18.4.1.2 Contract <Ctrct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the contract.

**Contract <Ctrct>** contains the following elements (see "DocumentIdentification35" on page 127 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		128
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIsse>	[0..1]	Date		128

##### 12.1.18.4.2 TransactionAmountInContractCurrency <TxAmtInCtrctCcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the amount of the transaction in the currency of the registered contract.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 242

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217

Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### **12.1.18.4.3 ExpectedShipmentDate <XpctdShpmtDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Expected shipment date as per registered contract.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

#### **12.1.18.4.4 ExpectedAdvancePaymentReturnDate <XpctdAdvncPmtRtrDt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Expected advance payment (or prepayment) return date in case counterparty will not deliver the goods/services.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

#### **12.1.18.4.5 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further details on the transaction certificate contract.

*Datatype:* "Max1025Text" on page 260

#### **12.1.18.5 TransactionCertificateRecord2**

*Definition:* Certificate record in which all currency control transactions are registered.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CertificateRecordIdentification <CertRcrdId>	[1..1]	Text		201
	DocumentSubmittingProcedure <DocSubmitgPrcdr>	[0..1]	Text		201
	Transaction <Tx>	[1..1]			201
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[1..1]			202
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]			203
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		203
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		203
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfld>	[0..1]	Text		203
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		203
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		204
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			204
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		204
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		204
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		204
	TransactionDate <TxDt>	[1..1]	Date		204
	TransactionType <TxTp>	[0..1]	Text		204
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[1..1]	Text		205
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	205
	Contract <Ctrct>	[0..1]	±	C12	205
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		206

#### 12.1.18.5.1 CertificateRecordIdentification <CertRcrdId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the certificate record.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.18.5.2 DocumentSubmittingProcedure <DocSubmitgPrcdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indication of procedure for submitting documents.

*Datatype:* "Exact1NumericText" on page 260

#### 12.1.18.5.3 Transaction <Tx>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Details of the transaction for which the record has been generated.

**Transaction <Tx>** contains the following **TransactionCertificate5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[1..1]			202
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]			203
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		203
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		203
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInflId>	[0..1]	Text		203
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		203
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		204
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			204
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		204
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		204
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		204
	TransactionDate <TxDt>	[1..1]	Date		204
	TransactionType <TxTp>	[0..1]	Text		204
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[1..1]	Text		205
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	205

#### 12.1.18.5.3.1 ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reference of the transaction, that is the underlying payment instruction or statement entry.

**ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>** contains the following **CertificateReference2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]			203
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		203
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		203
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInflId>	[0..1]	Text		203
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		203
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		204
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			204
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		204
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		204
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		204

**12.1.18.5.3.1.1 Identification <Id>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of the underlying payment instruction or statement entry.

**Identification <Id>** contains the following **CertificateIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <Msgld>	[0..1]	Text		203
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		203
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfld>	[0..1]	Text		203
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		203
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		204
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			204
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		204
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		204

**12.1.18.5.3.1.1.1 MessageIdentification <Msgld>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party of the underlying message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.18.5.3.1.1.2 AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique reference, as assigned by the account servicing institution, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.18.5.3.1.1.3 PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfld>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by a sending party, to unambiguously identify the payment information group within the message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.18.5.3.1.1.4 InstructionIdentification <InstrId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an instructing party for an instructed party, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

*Usage:* The instruction identification is a point to point reference that can be used between the instructing party and the instructed party to refer to the individual instruction. It can be included in several messages related to the instruction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.18.5.3.1.1.5 EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the initiating party, to unambiguously identify the transaction. This identification is passed on, unchanged, throughout the entire end-to-end chain.

*Usage:* The end-to-end identification can be used for reconciliation or to link tasks relating to the transaction. It can be included in several messages related to the transaction.

*Usage:* In case there are technical limitations to pass on multiple references, the end-to-end identification must be passed on throughout the entire end-to-end chain.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.18.5.3.1.1.6 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary reference related to the underlying transaction.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following **ProprietaryReference1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		204
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		204

**12.1.18.5.3.1.1.6.1 Type <Tp>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the type of reference reported.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.18.5.3.1.1.6.2 Reference <Ref>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary reference specification related to the underlying transaction.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.18.5.3.1.2 Date <Dt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date of the underlying payment instruction or statement entry.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

**12.1.18.5.3.2 TransactionDate <TxDt>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date of the underlying transaction.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256

**12.1.18.5.3.3 TransactionType <TxTp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of the transaction.

*Datatype:* "Exact1NumericText" on page 260

#### **12.1.18.5.3.4 LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* User community specific instrument.

Usage: This element is used to specify a local transaction type to further qualify the transaction type.

*Datatype:* "Exact5NumericText" on page 260

#### **12.1.18.5.3.5 Amount <Amt>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amount as provided in the transaction to be recorded under the contract.

*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 242

#### **Constraints**

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### **12.1.18.5.4 Contract <Ctrct>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Contract registration details related to the certificate record.

*Impacted by:* C12 "TransactionAmountInContractCurrencyPresenceRule"

**Contract <Ctrct>** contains the following elements (see "[TransactionCertificateContract2](#)" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ContractReference <CtrctRef>	[0..1]			199
{Or	RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>	[1..1]	Text		199
Or}	Contract <Ctrct>	[1..1]	±		199
	TransactionAmountInContractCurrency <TxAmtInCtrctCcy>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	199
	ExpectedShipmentDate <XpctdShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		200
	ExpectedAdvancePaymentReturnDate <XpctdAdvncPmtRtrDt>	[0..1]	Date		200
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		200

### Constraints

- **TransactionAmountInContractCurrencyPresenceRule**

If ContractReference/RegisteredContractIdentification is absent then TransactionAmountInContractCurrency must be absent.

On Condition

/ContractReference/RegisteredContractIdentification is absent

Following Must be True

/TransactionAmountInContractCurrency Must be absent

### 12.1.18.5.5 Attachment <Attchmnt>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Documents provided as attachments to the registered contract.

**Attachment <Attchmnt>** contains the following elements (see "[DocumentGeneralInformation5](#)" on page 125 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DocumentType <DocTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		126
	DocumentNumber <DocNb>	[1..1]	Text		126
	DocumentName <DocNm>	[0..1]	Text		126
	SenderReceiverSequenceIdentification <SndrRcvrSeqId>	[0..1]	Text		126
	IssueDate <IsseDt>	[0..1]	Date		126
	URL <URL>	[0..1]	Text		126
	LinkFileHash <LkFileHash>	[0..1]	(External Schema)		126
	AttachedBinaryFile <AttchdBinryFile>	[1..1]			127
	MIMEType <MIMETp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	EncodingType <NcodgTp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	CharacterSet <CharSet>	[0..1]	Text		127
	IncludedBinaryObject <InclBinryObjct>	[0..1]	Binary		127

### 12.1.18.6 RegisteredContract15

*Definition:* Document that a user must file with an authorised servicer for each contract that involves foreign currency transactions with non residents.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	RegisteredContractClosureIdentification <RegdCtrctClsrld>	[1..1]	Text		208
	ReportingParty <RptgPty>	[1..1]	±		208
	RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		208
	OriginalRegisteredContract <OrgnlRegdCtrct>	[1..1]	±		209
	Priority <Ppty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		209
	ClosureReason <ClsrRsn>	[1..1]			209
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		209
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		210
	Cession <Csn>	[0..1]			210
	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		210
	DocumentNumber <DocNb>	[0..1]	Text		210
	DocumentDate <DocDt>	[0..1]	Date		210
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		210
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C7	211

#### 12.1.18.6.1 RegisteredContractClosureIdentification <RegdCtrctClsrld>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the registered contract closure.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.18.6.2 ReportingParty <RptgPty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party who registered the currency control contract.

**ReportingParty <RptgPty>** contains the following elements (see "[TradeParty5](#)" on page 176 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PartyIdentification <Ptyld>	[1..1]	±		177
	LegalOrganisation <LglOrg>	[0..1]	±		177
	TaxParty <TaxPty>	[0..*]	±		177

#### 12.1.18.6.3 RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Agent who registered the currency control contract.

**RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

#### 12.1.18.6.4 OriginalRegisteredContract <OrgnlRegdCtrct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Original registered contract identification.

**OriginalRegisteredContract <OrgnlRegdCtrct>** contains the following elements (see "[DocumentIdentification29](#)" on page 164 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		164
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIssse>	[1..1]	Date		164

#### 12.1.18.6.5 Priority <Prty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Priority of the registered contract closure.

*Datatype:* "[Priority2Code](#)" on page 252

CodeName	Name	Definition
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.

#### 12.1.18.6.6 ClosureReason <ClsrRsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason of the closure.

**ClosureReason <ClsrRsn>** contains one of the following **ContractClosureReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		209
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		210

##### 12.1.18.6.6.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalContractClosureReason1Code](#)" on page 248

**12.1.18.6.6.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Reason in a proprietary format.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262**12.1.18.6.7 Cession <Cssn>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Contract cession details.**Cession <Cssn>** contains the following **ContractCessionData1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		210
	DocumentNumber <DocNb>	[0..1]	Text		210
	DocumentDate <DocDt>	[0..1]	Date		210

**12.1.18.6.7.1 Party <Pty>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* The party to which the cession is made.**Party <Pty>** contains the following elements (see "TradeParty5" on page 176 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PartyIdentification <PtyId>	[1..1]	±		177
	LegalOrganisation <LglOrg>	[0..1]	±		177
	TaxParty <TaxPty>	[0..*]	±		177

**12.1.18.6.7.2 DocumentNumber <DocNb>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Number of the document under which the cession is made.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262**12.1.18.6.7.3 DocumentDate <DocDt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Date of the document under which the cession is made.*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 256**12.1.18.6.8 Attachment <Attchmnt>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Documents provided as attachments to the contract registration closure request.

**Attachment <Attchmnt>** contains the following elements (see "[DocumentGeneralInformation5](#)" on page 125 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DocumentType <DocTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		126
	DocumentNumber <DocNb>	[1..1]	Text		126
	DocumentName <DocNm>	[0..1]	Text		126
	SenderReceiverSequenceIdentification <SndrRcvrSeqId>	[0..1]	Text		126
	IssueDate <IsseDt>	[0..1]	Date		126
	URL <URL>	[0..1]	Text		126
	LinkFileHash <LkFileHash>	[0..1]	(External Schema)		126
	AttachedBinaryFile <AttchdBinryFile>	[1..1]			127
	MIMEType <MIMETp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	EncodingType <NcodgTp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	CharacterSet <CharSet>	[0..1]	Text		127
	IncludedBinaryObject <InclBinryObjct>	[0..1]	Binary		127

#### 12.1.18.6.9 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C7 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

#### 12.1.18.7 RegisteredContract14

*Definition:* Document that a user must file with an authorised servicer for each contract that involves foreign currency transactions with non residents.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	RegisteredContractAmendmentIdentification <RegdCtrctAmdmntId>	[1..1]	Text		212
	OriginalRegisteredContractIdentification <OrgnlRegdCtrctId>	[1..1]	Text		212
	Priority <Prty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		212
	Contract <Ctrct>	[1..1]	±		213
	ContractBalance <CtrctBal>	[0..*]			215
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			215
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		215
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		215
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	215
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		216
	PaymentScheduleType <PmtSchdlTp>	[0..1]			216
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		216
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		217
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		217
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		217
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C7	217

#### 12.1.18.7.1 RegisteredContractAmendmentIdentification <RegdCtrctAmdmntId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the registered contract amendment request.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.18.7.2 OriginalRegisteredContractIdentification <OrgnlRegdCtrctId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the original contract registration, as registered with the registration agent.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.18.7.3 Priority <Prty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Priority requested for the amendment of the registered contract.

*Datatype:* "Priority2Code" on page 252

CodeName	Name	Definition
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.

#### **12.1.18.7.4 Contract <Ctrct>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Amendment details of the registered contract for the registered contract.

**Contract <Ctrct>** contains one of the following elements (see "[UnderlyingContract3Choice](#)" on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Loan <Ln>	[1..1]	±		114
Or}	Trade <Trad>	[1..1]			117
	ContractDocumentIdentification <CtrctDocId>	[0..1]	±		118
	TradeTypeIdentification <TradTpId>	[0..1]	Text		119
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	119
	Buyer <Buyr>	[1..*]	±		119
	Seller <Sellr>	[1..*]	±		119
	MaturityDate <MtrtyDt>	[0..1]	Date		120
	ProlongationFlag <PrlngrtnFlg>	[0..1]	Indicator		120
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		120
	SettlementCurrency <SttlmCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	120
	ExchangeRateInformation <XchgRateInf>	[0..1]			120
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	121
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[0..1]	Rate		121
	RateType <RateTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		121
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		121
	PaymentSchedule <PmtSchdl>	[0..1]			122
	InterestScheduleIdentification <IntrstSchdlId>	[0..1]	Text		122
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[0..1]	Date		122
	DueDate <DueDt>	[0..1]	Date		122
	ShipmentSchedule <ShpmtSchdl>	[0..1]			122
{Or	ShipmentDateRange <ShpmtDtRg>	[1..1]			123
	EarliestShipmentDate <EarlstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		123
	LatestShipmentDate <LatstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		123
Or}	ShipmentSubSchedule <ShpmtSubSchdl>	[2..*]			123
	SubQuantityValue <SubQtyVal>	[1..1]	Quantity		124
	EarliestShipmentDate <EarlstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		124
	LatestShipmentDate <LatstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		124
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		124

**12.1.18.7.5 ContractBalance <CtrctBal>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Contract balance on date of contract registration.**ContractBalance <CtrctBal>** contains the following **ContractBalance1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			215
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		215
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		215
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	215
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		216

**12.1.18.7.5.1 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the type of the contract balance.**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **ContractBalanceType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		215
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		215

**12.1.18.7.5.1.1 Code <Cd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the nature of a balance, in a coded form.*Datatype:* "ExternalContractBalanceType1Code" on page 248**12.1.18.7.5.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the nature of a balance, in a proprietary form.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262**12.1.18.7.5.2 Amount <Amt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Currency and amount of money of the contract balance.*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 242

**Constraints**

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**12.1.18.7.5.3 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the balance is a credit or a debit balance. A zero balance is considered to be a credit balance.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebit3Code" on page 246

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

**12.1.18.7.6 PaymentScheduleType <PmtSchdITp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of the payment schedule provided in the contract.

**PaymentScheduleType <PmtSchdITp>** contains one of the following **PaymentScheduleType2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		216
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		217

**12.1.18.7.6.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Payment schedule type defined in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "PaymentScheduleType2Code" on page 251

CodeName	Name	Definition
CNTR	Contract	Payment schedule is defined as per contract.
ESTM	Estimated	Payment schedule is estimated.
BOTH	Both	Contract Payment schedule is both defined as per Contract and estimated.

**12.1.18.7.6 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Payment schedule type defined in a proprietary format.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262**12.1.18.7.7 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Further additional information on the amendment.*Datatype:* "Max1025Text" on page 260**12.1.18.7.8 Attachment <Attchmnt>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Documents provided as attachments to the contract registration amendment request.**Attachment <Attchmnt>** contains the following elements (see "DocumentGeneralInformation5" on page 125 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DocumentType <DocTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		126
	DocumentNumber <DocNb>	[1..1]	Text		126
	DocumentName <DocNm>	[0..1]	Text		126
	SenderReceiverSequenceIdentification <SndrRcvrSeqId>	[0..1]	Text		126
	IssueDate <IssDt>	[0..1]	Date		126
	URL <URL>	[0..1]	Text		126
	LinkFileHash <LkFileHash>	[0..1]	(External Schema)		126
	AttachedBinaryFile <AttchdBinryFile>	[1..1]			127
	MIMEType <MIMEp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	EncodingType <NcodgTp>	[0..1]	Text		127
	CharacterSet <CharSet>	[0..1]	Text		127
	IncludedBinaryObject <InclBinryObjct>	[0..1]	Binary		127

**12.1.18.7.9 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.*Impacted by:* C7 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

### 12.1.18.8 RegisteredContract13

*Definition:* Amendment data of document that a user must file with an authorised servicer for each contract that involves foreign currency transactions with non residents.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ContractRegistrationAmendmentIdentification <CtrctRegnAmdmntId>	[1..1]	Text		218
	ReportingParty <RptgPty>	[1..1]	±		218
	RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		219
	RegisteredContractAmendment <RegdCtrctAmdmnt>	[1..*]	±		219
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C7	219

#### 12.1.18.8.1 ContractRegistrationAmendmentIdentification <CtrctRegnAmdmntId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the contract registration amendment.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 262

#### 12.1.18.8.2 ReportingParty <RptgPty>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party registering the currency control contract.

**ReportingParty <RptgPty>** contains the following elements (see "[TradeParty5](#)" on page 176 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PartyIdentification <PtyId>	[1..1]	±		177
	LegalOrganisation <LglOrg>	[0..1]	±		177
	TaxParty <TaxPty>	[0..*]	±		177

**12.1.18.8.3 RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Agent which registers the currency control contract.**RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

**12.1.18.8.4 RegisteredContractAmendment <RegdCtrctAmdmnt>***Presence:* [1..\*]*Definition:* Amendment details applied on one or several registered contracts.**RegisteredContractAmendment <RegdCtrctAmdmnt>** contains the following elements (see "[RegisteredContract14](#)" on page 211 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	RegisteredContractAmendmentIdentification <RegdCtrctAmdmntId>	[1..1]	Text		212
	OriginalRegisteredContractIdentification <OrgnlRegdCtrctId>	[1..1]	Text		212
	Priority <Prty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		212
	Contract <Ctrct>	[1..1]	±		213
	ContractBalance <CtrctBal>	[0..*]			215
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			215
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		215
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		215
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	215
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		216
	PaymentScheduleType <PmtSchdlTp>	[0..1]			216
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		216
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		217
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		217
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		217
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C7	217

**12.1.18.8.5 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>***Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C7 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

### 12.1.18.9 RegisteredContract12

*Definition:* Document that a user must file with an authorised servicer for each contract that involves foreign currency transactions with non residents.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalContractRegistrationRequest <OrgnlCtrctRegnReq>	[0..1]	Text		221
	IssuerFinancialInstitution <IssrFI>	[1..1]	±		221
	Contract <Ctrct>	[1..1]	±		222
	ContractBalance <CtrctBal>	[0..*]			224
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			224
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		224
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		224
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	224
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		225
	PaymentScheduleType <PmtSchdlTp>	[0..1]			225
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		225
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		226
	RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>	[1..1]	±		226
	PreviousRegisteredContractIdentification <PrvsRegdCtrctId>	[0..1]	±		226
	RegisteredContractJournal <RegdCtrctJrnl>	[0..*]	±		226
	Amendment <Amdmnt>	[0..*]	±		227
	Submission <Submissn>	[1..1]	±		227
	Delivery <Dlvry>	[1..1]	±		227
	LoanPrincipalAmount <LnPrncplAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	228
	EstimatedDateIndicator <EstmtdDtInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		228
	InterCompanyLoan <IntrCpnyLn>	[1..1]	Indicator		228
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		229

#### 12.1.18.9.1 OriginalContractRegistrationRequest <OrgnlCtrctRegnReq>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of the contract registration creation, amendment or closure request.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

#### 12.1.18.9.2 IssuerFinancialInstitution <IssrFI>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution of the issuer of the contract.

**IssuerFinancialInstitution <IssrFI>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

### 12.1.18.9.3 Contract <Ctrct>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Details of the contract being registered.

**Contract <Ctrct>** contains one of the following elements (see "[UnderlyingContract3Choice](#)" on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Loan <Ln>	[1..1]	±		114
Or}	Trade <Trad>	[1..1]			117
	ContractDocumentIdentification <CtrctDocId>	[0..1]	±		118
	TradeTypeIdentification <TradTpId>	[0..1]	Text		119
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	119
	Buyer <Buyr>	[1..*]	±		119
	Seller <Sellr>	[1..*]	±		119
	MaturityDate <MtrtyDt>	[0..1]	Date		120
	ProlongationFlag <PrlngrtnFlg>	[0..1]	Indicator		120
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		120
	SettlementCurrency <SttlmCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	120
	ExchangeRateInformation <XchgRateInf>	[0..1]			120
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	121
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[0..1]	Rate		121
	RateType <RateTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		121
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		121
	PaymentSchedule <PmtSchdl>	[0..1]			122
	InterestScheduleIdentification <IntrstSchdlId>	[0..1]	Text		122
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[0..1]	Date		122
	DueDate <DueDt>	[0..1]	Date		122
	ShipmentSchedule <ShpmtSchdl>	[0..1]			122
{Or	ShipmentDateRange <ShpmtDtRg>	[1..1]			123
	EarliestShipmentDate <EarlstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		123
	LatestShipmentDate <LatstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		123
Or}	ShipmentSubSchedule <ShpmtSubSchdl>	[2..*]			123
	SubQuantityValue <SubQtyVal>	[1..1]	Quantity		124
	EarliestShipmentDate <EarlstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		124
	LatestShipmentDate <LatstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		124
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		124

**12.1.18.9.4 ContractBalance <CtrctBal>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Contract balance on date of contract registration.**ContractBalance <CtrctBal>** contains the following **ContractBalance1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			224
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		224
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		224
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	224
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		225

**12.1.18.9.4.1 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the type of the contract balance.**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **ContractBalanceType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		224
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		224

**12.1.18.9.4.1.1 Code <Cd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the nature of a balance, in a coded form.*Datatype:* "ExternalContractBalanceType1Code" on page 248**12.1.18.9.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the nature of a balance, in a proprietary form.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262**12.1.18.9.4.2 Amount <Amt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Currency and amount of money of the contract balance.*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 242

**Constraints**

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**12.1.18.9.4.3 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the balance is a credit or a debit balance. A zero balance is considered to be a credit balance.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebit3Code" on page 246

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

**12.1.18.9.5 PaymentScheduleType <PmtSchdITp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of the payment schedule provided in the contract.

**PaymentScheduleType <PmtSchdITp>** contains one of the following **PaymentScheduleType2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		225
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		226

**12.1.18.9.5.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Payment schedule type defined in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "PaymentScheduleType2Code" on page 251

CodeName	Name	Definition
CNTR	Contract	Payment schedule is defined as per contract.
ESTM	Estimated	Payment schedule is estimated.
BOTH	Both	Contract Payment schedule is both defined as per Contract and estimated.

**12.1.18.9.5 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Payment schedule type defined in a proprietary format.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262**12.1.18.9.6 RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the registered contract as assigned by the registration agent.**RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>** contains the following elements (see "DocumentIdentification29" on page 164 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		164
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIsse>	[1..1]	Date		164

**12.1.18.9.7 PreviousRegisteredContractIdentification <PrvsRegdCtrctId>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identification of a previously defined registered contract linked to the same underlying contract.

Usage:

This is the identification of a previous contract registration for the same underlying contract, which was closed. In most cases, this is used when a reporting party moves from one registration agent to another.

**PreviousRegisteredContractIdentification <PrvsRegdCtrctId>** contains the following elements (see "DocumentIdentification22" on page 165 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		165
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIsse>	[0..1]	Date		165

**12.1.18.9.8 RegisteredContractJournal <RegdCtrctJrnl>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Journal of previously closed registered contracts for the same underlying contract, which were requested at the same registration agent.

**RegisteredContractJournal <RegdCtrctJrnl>** contains the following elements (see "[RegisteredContractJournal2](#)" on page 195 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		195
	Uniquelidentification <UnqlId>	[0..1]	±		195
	ClosureDate <ClsrDt>	[1..1]	Date		196
	ClosureReason <ClsrRsn>	[1..1]			196
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		196
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		196

#### 12.1.18.9.9 Amendment <Amdmnt>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Details on amendments to the registered contract.

**Amendment <Amdmnt>** contains the following elements (see "[RegisteredContractAmendment1](#)" on page 196 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AmendmentDate <AmdmntDt>	[1..1]	Date		197
	Document <Doc>	[1..1]	±		197
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		197
	AmendmentReason <AmdmntRsn>	[0..1]	Text		197
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		197

#### 12.1.18.9.10 Submission <Submissn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the communication method for the submission of the registered contract.

**Submission <Submissn>** contains the following elements (see "[RegisteredContractCommunication1](#)" on page 197 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Method <Mtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		197
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		198

#### 12.1.18.9.11 Delivery <Dlrvy>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the communication method for the delivery of the registered contract.

**Delivery <Dlvry>** contains the following elements (see "[RegisteredContractCommunication1](#)" on page 197 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Method <Mtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		197
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		198

#### 12.1.18.9.12 LoanPrincipalAmount <LnPrncplAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money the borrower pays back to the lender outside of interests and charges.

Usage:

Only applicable for loan contracts.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C5 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* "[ActiveCurrencyAndAmount](#)" on page 242

##### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 12.1.18.9.13 EstimatedDateIndicator <EstmtdDtInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the dates provided are estimates or not.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 258):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 12.1.18.9.14 InterCompanyLoan <IntrCpnyLn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether loan in which both the lender and the borrower are divisions of the same corporation or not.

Usage:

Only applicable for loan contracts.

*Datatype*: One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 258):

- *Meaning When True*: True
- *Meaning When False*: False

#### **12.1.18.9.15 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>**

*Presence*: [0..1]

*Definition*: Further information on the registered contract.

*Datatype*: "[Max1025Text](#)" on page 260

#### **12.1.18.10 RegisteredContract11**

*Definition*: Document that a user must file with an authorised servicer for each contract that involves foreign currency transactions with non residents.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalContractRegistrationRequest <OrgnlCtrctRegnReq>	[0..1]	Text		230
	ReportingParty <RptgPty>	[1..1]	±		231
	RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		231
	IssuerFinancialInstitution <IssrFI>	[1..1]	±		231
	Contract <Ctrct>	[1..1]	±		231
	ContractBalance <CtrctBal>	[0..*]			233
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			233
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		233
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		233
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	233
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		234
	PaymentScheduleType <PmtSchdlTp>	[0..1]			234
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		234
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		235
	RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>	[1..1]	±		235
	PreviousRegisteredContractIdentification <PrvsRegdCtrctId>	[0..1]	±		235
	RegisteredContractJournal <RegdCtrctJrnl>	[0..*]	±		235
	Amendment <Amdmnt>	[0..*]	±		236
	Submission <Submissn>	[1..1]	±		236
	Delivery <Dlvry>	[1..1]	±		236
	LoanPrincipalAmount <LnPrncplAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	237
	EstimatedDateIndicator <EstmtdDtInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		237
	InterCompanyLoan <IntrCpnyLn>	[1..1]	Indicator		237
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		238
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C7	238

#### 12.1.18.10.1 OriginalContractRegistrationRequest <OrgnlCtrctRegnReq>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of the contract registration creation, amendment or closure request.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.18.10.2 ReportingParty <RptgPty>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Party registering the currency control contract.**ReportingParty <RptgPty>** contains the following elements (see "[TradeParty5](#)" on page 176 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PartyIdentification <PtyId>	[1..1]	±		177
	LegalOrganisation <LglOrg>	[0..1]	±		177
	TaxParty <TaxPty>	[0..*]	±		177

**12.1.18.10.3 RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Agent which registers the currency control contract.**RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

**12.1.18.10.4 IssuerFinancialInstitution <IssrFI>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Financial institution of the issuer of the contract.**IssuerFinancialInstitution <IssrFI>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6](#)" on page 161 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		161
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		162

**12.1.18.10.5 Contract <Ctrct>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Details of the contract being registered.

**Contract <Ctrct>** contains one of the following elements (see "[UnderlyingContract3Choice](#)" on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Loan <Ln>	[1..1]	±		114
Or}	Trade <Trad>	[1..1]			117
	ContractDocumentIdentification <CtrctDocId>	[0..1]	±		118
	TradeTypeIdentification <TradTpId>	[0..1]	Text		119
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	119
	Buyer <Buyr>	[1..*]	±		119
	Seller <Sellr>	[1..*]	±		119
	MaturityDate <MtrtyDt>	[0..1]	Date		120
	ProlongationFlag <PrlngrtnFlg>	[0..1]	Indicator		120
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		120
	SettlementCurrency <SttlmCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	120
	ExchangeRateInformation <XchgRateInf>	[0..1]			120
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	121
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[0..1]	Rate		121
	RateType <RateTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		121
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		121
	PaymentSchedule <PmtSchdl>	[0..1]			122
	InterestScheduleIdentification <IntrstSchdlId>	[0..1]	Text		122
	ExpectedDate <XpctdDt>	[0..1]	Date		122
	DueDate <DueDt>	[0..1]	Date		122
	ShipmentSchedule <ShpmtSchdl>	[0..1]			122
{Or	ShipmentDateRange <ShpmtDtRg>	[1..1]			123
	EarliestShipmentDate <EarlstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		123
	LatestShipmentDate <LatstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		123
Or}	ShipmentSubSchedule <ShpmtSubSchdl>	[2..*]			123
	SubQuantityValue <SubQtyVal>	[1..1]	Quantity		124
	EarliestShipmentDate <EarlstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		124
	LatestShipmentDate <LatstShpmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		124
	Attachment <Attchmnt>	[0..*]	±		124

**12.1.18.10.6 ContractBalance <CtrctBal>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Contract balance on date of contract registration.**ContractBalance <CtrctBal>** contains the following **ContractBalance1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			233
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		233
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		233
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	233
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		234

**12.1.18.10.6.1 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the type of the contract balance.**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **ContractBalanceType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		233
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		233

**12.1.18.10.6.1.1 Code <Cd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the nature of a balance, in a coded form.*Datatype:* "ExternalContractBalanceType1Code" on page 248**12.1.18.10.6.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the nature of a balance, in a proprietary form.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262**12.1.18.10.6.2 Amount <Amt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Currency and amount of money of the contract balance.*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 242

**Constraints**

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**12.1.18.10.6.3 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the balance is a credit or a debit balance. A zero balance is considered to be a credit balance.

*Datatype:* "CreditDebit3Code" on page 246

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

**12.1.18.10.7 PaymentScheduleType <PmtSchdITp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of the payment schedule provided in the contract.

**PaymentScheduleType <PmtSchdITp>** contains one of the following **PaymentScheduleType2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		234
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		235

**12.1.18.10.7.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Payment schedule type defined in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "PaymentScheduleType2Code" on page 251

CodeName	Name	Definition
CNTR	Contract	Payment schedule is defined as per contract.
ESTM	Estimated	Payment schedule is estimated.
BOTH	Both	Contract Payment schedule is both defined as per Contract and estimated.

**12.1.18.10.7.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Payment schedule type defined in a proprietary format.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262**12.1.18.10.8 RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the registered contract as assigned by the registration agent.**RegisteredContractIdentification <RegdCtrctId>** contains the following elements (see "DocumentIdentification29" on page 164 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		164
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIsse>	[1..1]	Date		164

**12.1.18.10.9 PreviousRegisteredContractIdentification <PrvsRegdCtrctId>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identification of a previously defined registered contract linked to the same underlying contract.

Usage:

This is the identification of a previous contract registration for the same underlying contract, which was closed. In most cases, this is used when a reporting party moves from one registration agent to another.

**PreviousRegisteredContractIdentification <PrvsRegdCtrctId>** contains the following elements (see "DocumentIdentification22" on page 165 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		165
	DateOfIssue <DtOfIsse>	[0..1]	Date		165

**12.1.18.10.10 RegisteredContractJournal <RegdCtrctJrnl>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Journal of previously closed registered contracts for the same underlying contract, which were requested at the same registration agent.

**RegisteredContractJournal <RegdCtrctJrnl>** contains the following elements (see "[RegisteredContractJournal2](#)" on page 195 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	RegistrationAgent <RegnAgt>	[1..1]	±		195
	Uniquelidentification <UnqlId>	[0..1]	±		195
	ClosureDate <ClsrDt>	[1..1]	Date		196
	ClosureReason <ClsrRsn>	[1..1]			196
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		196
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		196

#### 12.1.18.10.11 Amendment <Amdmnt>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Details on amendments to the registered contract.

**Amendment <Amdmnt>** contains the following elements (see "[RegisteredContractAmendment1](#)" on page 196 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AmendmentDate <AmdmntDt>	[1..1]	Date		197
	Document <Doc>	[1..1]	±		197
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		197
	AmendmentReason <AmdmntRsn>	[0..1]	Text		197
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		197

#### 12.1.18.10.12 Submission <Submissn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the communication method for the submission of the registered contract.

**Submission <Submissn>** contains the following elements (see "[RegisteredContractCommunication1](#)" on page 197 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Method <Mtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		197
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		198

#### 12.1.18.10.13 Delivery <Dlvry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the communication method for the delivery of the registered contract.

**Delivery <Dlvry>** contains the following elements (see "[RegisteredContractCommunication1](#)" on page 197 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Method <Mtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		197
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		198

#### 12.1.18.10.14 LoanPrincipalAmount <LnPrncplAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount of money the borrower pays back to the lender outside of interests and charges.

Usage:

Only applicable for loan contracts.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C5 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 242

##### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 12.1.18.10.15 EstimatedDateIndicator <EstmtdDtInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the dates provided are estimates or not.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "[TrueFalseIndicator](#)" on page 258):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 12.1.18.10.16 InterCompanyLoan <IntrCpnyLn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether loan in which both the lender and the borrower are divisions of the same corporation or not.

Usage:

Only applicable for loan contracts.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see ["TrueFalseIndicator"](#) on page 258):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 12.1.18.10.17 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Further information on the registered contract.

*Datatype:* ["Max1025Text"](#) on page 260

#### 12.1.18.10.18 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C7 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see ["SupplementaryData1"](#) on page 167 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		167
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		167

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 12.1.19 System Identification

### 12.1.19.1 ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice

*Definition:* Choice of a clearing system identifier.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		238
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		239

#### 12.1.19.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a clearing system, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* ["ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code"](#) on page 248

**12.1.19.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification code for a clearing system, that has not yet been identified in the list of clearing systems.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 262

**12.1.20 Tax****12.1.20.1 TaxExemptionReasonFormat1Choice**

*Definition:* Choice between specification of the tax exemption reason in structured or free text format.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Unstructured <Ustrd>	[1..1]	Text		239
Or}	Structured <Strd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		239

**12.1.20.1.1 Unstructured <Ustrd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 261

**12.1.20.1.2 Structured <Strd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Structured format.

*Datatype:* "TaxExemptReason1Code" on page 253

CodeName	Name	Definition
NONE	None	Account is not tax exempt.
MASA	MaxiISA	Maxi Individual Savings Account (ISA). Account is an ISA with a single ISA manager that may contain cash, stocks and shares, investment funds and life assurance up to the prescribed annual subscription limit (required for UK). The Maxi ISA allows an investor to save all three of the different elements of ISA investments that are allowed, with one savings institution in a single account.
MISA	MiniCashISA	Mini Cash Individual Savings Account (ISA). Account is an ISA with a single ISA manager that may contain cash, stocks and shares, investment funds and life assurance up to the prescribed annual subscription limit (required for UK). An investor can hold more than one Mini ISA to utilise the overall Mini ISA investment limit, and can invest with more than one savings institution, however only one of the three elements

CodeName	Name	Definition
		of ISA investment is allowed in a single account.
SISA	MiniStocksAndSharesISA	Mini Stocks and Shares Individual Savings Account (ISA). Account is an ISA with an ISA manager that may only contain stocks, shares and collective investments up to the prescribed annual subscription limit (required for UK).
IISA	MiniInsurancelSA	Mini Insurance Individual Savings Account (ISA). Account is an ISA with an ISA manager that may only contain life insurance investments up to the prescribed annual subscription limit (required for UK).
CUYP	CurrentYearPayment	Account is for current year payments into an investment retirement account (required for US).
PRYP	PriorYearPayment	Account is for a prior year payment into an investment retirement account (required for US).
ASTR	AssetTransfer	Account is for an asset transfer into an investment retirement account (required for US).
EMPY	EmployeePriorYear	Account is for employee - prior year contributions into an investment retirement account (required for US).
EMCY	EmployeeCurrentYear	Account is for employee - current year contributions into an investment retirement account (required for US).
EPRY	EmployerPriorYear	Account is for employer - prior year contributions into an investment retirement account (required for US).
ECYE	EmployerCurrentYear	Account is for employer - current year contributions into an investment retirement account (required for US).
NFPI	NonFundPrototypeIRA	Account is for non-fund prototype Individual Retirement Account (IRA) into an investment retirement account (required for US).
NFQP	NonFundQualifiedPlan	Account is for non-fund qualified plan into an investment retirement account (required for US).
DECP	DefinedContributionPlan	Account is for a defined contribution plan (required for US).
IRAC	IndividualRetirementAccount	Account is an Individual Retirement Account (IRA) (required for US).
IRAR	IndividualRetirementAccountRollover	Account is for an Individual Retirement Account (IRA) - Rollover (required for US).
KEOG	KEOGH	KEOGH. Account is a tax-deferred retirement plan designed to help self-employed workers or individuals who earn self-employed income establish a

CodeName	Name	Definition
		retirement savings program (required for US).
PFSP	ProfitSharingPlan	Account is a Profit Sharing Plan (required for US).
401K	FourHundredAndOneK	401k. Account is an optional retirement plan supported by many companies, in which income is invested before it is taxed (required for US).
SIRA	SelfDirectedIRA	Self-Directed Individual Retirement Account (IRA) (required for US).
403B	FourHundredAndThreeB	403(b). Account is a tax-deferred investment and savings program for employees of hospitals, educational institutions and other non-profit organisations, to save and invest in their own retirement. The name refers to the relevant section in the US Internal Revenue Code (required for US).
457X	FourHundredFiftySeven	457. Account is a non-qualified deferred compensation program that is available to state and local governments and not-for-profit employers (required for US).
RIRA	RothIRAFundPrototype	Roth Individual Retirement Account (IRA) Fund Prototype. Account is a tax-deferred retirement account based on the reverse principle of a traditional IRA. Retirement contributions are taxed upfront, but withdrawals may be made tax-free when a certain age is reached, provided the Roth IRA has been set up for a certain period of time (required for US).
RIAN	RothIRANonPrototype	Roth Individual Retirement Account (IRA) Non-Prototype. Account is a tax-deferred retirement account based on the reverse principle of a traditional IRA. Retirement contributions are taxed upfront, but withdrawals may be made tax-free when a certain age is reached, provided the Roth IRA has been set up for a certain period of time (required for US).
RCRF	RothConversionIRAFundPrototype	Roth Conversion Individual Retirement Account (IRA) Fund Prototype. Account is a retirement account established when a party switches from a regular IRA ( required for US).
RCIP	RothConversionIRANonPrototype	Roth Conversion Individual Retirement Account (IRA) Non-Prototype. Account is a retirement account established when a party switches from a Regular IRA (required for US).
EIFP	EducationIRAFundPrototype	Education Individual Retirement Account Fund Prototype (also known as an Education Savings Account). Account is a savings plan open to anyone under the age of 18. When the account owner

CodeName	Name	Definition
		withdraws money to pay for qualified higher education expenses, the withdrawals are generally tax-free (required for US).
EIOP	EducationIRANonPrototype	Education Individual Retirement Account Non-Prototype (also known as an Education Savings Account). Account is a savings plan open to anyone under the age of 18. When the account owner withdraws money to pay for qualified higher education expenses, the withdrawals are generally tax-free (required in the US).

## 12.2 Message Datatypes

### 12.2.1 Amount

#### 12.2.1.1 ActiveCurrencyAndAmount

*Definition:* A number of monetary units specified in an active currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.

*Type:* Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveCurrencyCode" on page 243

#### Format

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

## 12.2.2 Binary

### 12.2.2.1 Max100KBinary

*Definition:* Binary data of 100K maximum.

*Type:* Binary

#### Format

minLength	1
maxLength	102400

## 12.2.3 CodeSet

### 12.2.3.1 ActiveCurrencyCode

*Definition:* A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

*Type:* CodeSet

#### Format

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}
---------	------------

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### 12.2.3.2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode

*Definition:* A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme, as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

*Type:* CodeSet

#### Format

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}
---------	------------

#### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### 12.2.3.3 AddressType2Code

*Definition:* Specifies the type of address.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

### 12.2.3.4 BenchmarkCurveName2Code

*Definition:* Specifies a benchmark curve name.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
WIBO	WIBOR	Warsaw Interbank Offered Rate.
TREA	Treasury	Treasury benchmark that comes in three types: the yield curve, the par curve, and the spot curve. All curves also have a constituent time series.
TIBO	TIBOR	Tokyo Interbank Offered Rate.
TLBO	TELBOR	Tel Aviv Interbank Offered Rate.
SWAP	SWAP	In curve construction, Swap is the long portion of the curve constituting about 3 years to 30 years term.  The exchange of one security, currency or interest rate for another to change the maturity (bonds), or quality of issues (stocks or bonds), or because investment objectives have changed.
STBO	STIBOR	Stockholm Interbank Offered Rate.
PRBO	PRIBOR	Czech Fixing of Interest Rates on Interbank Deposits.
PFAN	Pfandbriefe	Pfandbriefe security is a collateralised bullet bond backed by either mortgage loans or loans to the public sector. Pfandbriefe differ from traditional asset-backed securities in significant ways. The most important difference is that Pfandbriefe carry no pre-payment risk since they remain on the balance sheet of the issuing institution. Therefore, their

CodeName	Name	Definition
		spreads over sovereign bonds are attributable to liquidity and credit quality alone. New indices have been created and existing indices have been modified in response to the growing importance of the Pfandbriefe market. The Deutsche Borse has three synthetic indices called REX, JEX, and PEX. The Pfandbriefe curve is used as a reference for credit as well as mortgage market.
NIBO	NIBOR	Norwegian Interbank Offered Rate.
MAAA	MuniAAA	Benchmark curve used for municipals based on the best credit rating for municipal market debt.
MOSP	MOSPRIM	Moscow Prime Offered Rate.
LIBO	LIBOR	London Interbank Offered Rate, the interest rate that major international banks in London charge each other for borrowing.
LIBI	LIBID	Rate at which major international banks are willing to take deposits from one another, is normally 1/8 percent below LIBOR.  London InterBank Bid Rate, the rate bid by banks on Eurocurrency deposits; the international rate that banks lend to other banks.
JIBA	JIBAR	Johannesburg Interbank Agreed Rate.
ISDA	ISDAFIX	Worldwide common reference rate value for fixed interest rate swap rates, as defined by the International Swaps and Derivatives Association (ISDA).
GCFR	GCFRepo	GCF Repo Index, the Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation (DTCC) general collateral finance repurchase agreements index.
FUSW	FutureSWAP	Portion of a synthetic curve that is composed of Eurodollar or Treasury or similar Futures and Swap rates. The term usually begins at 3 months to 2 years for the futures strip component with the Swaps filling in the points to 10 years and beyond.
EUCH	EuroSwiss	Swiss Franc LIBOR rate.
EUUS	EURODOLLAR	Rate for the eurodollars, time deposits denominated in U.S. dollars at banks outside the United States, and thus are not under the jurisdiction of the Federal Reserve.
EURI	Euribor	Euro Interbank Offer Rate is the rate at which Euro inter-bank term deposits within the Euro zone are offered by one prime bank to another prime bank.

CodeName	Name	Definition
EONS	EONIASwaps	Euro OverNight Index Average swap rate.
EONA	EONIA	Euro OverNight Index Average rate.
CIBO	CIBOR	Copenhagen Interbank Offered Rate.
CDOR	CDOR	Canadian Dollar Offered Rate.
BUBO	BUBOR	Budapest Interbank Offered Rate.
BBSW	BBSW	Australian Financial Markets Association (AFMA) Bank-Bill Reference Rate (BBSW).

### 12.2.3.5 CommunicationMethod4Code

*Definition:* Specifies a communication method used for the transmission of documents.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
EMAL	Email	Transmission by e-mail.
FAXI	Fax	Transmission by fax.
FILE	File	Transmission by file transfer.
ONLI	Online	Transmission on line, for example, in a web portal.
PHON	Phone	Transmission by telephone.
POST	PostalService	Transmission by postal service.
PROP	Proprietary	Transmission by proprietary method.
SWMT	SWIFTMT	Transmission by Swift (FIN).
SWMX	SWIFTMX	Transmission by SWIFTNET.

### 12.2.3.6 CountryCode

*Definition:* Code to identify a country, a dependency, or another area of particular geopolitical interest, on the basis of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

*Type:* CodeSet

#### Format

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}

#### Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### 12.2.3.7 CreditDebit3Code

*Definition:* Specifies if an operation is an increase or a decrease.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

### 12.2.3.8 DepositType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies whether the deposit is fixed term or call/notice.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
FITE	FixedTerm	Specifies that it is a fixed term deposit.
CALL	Call	Specifies that it is a call/notice deposit.

### 12.2.3.9 ExchangeRateType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies a type of financial or commercial document.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
SPOT	Spot	Exchange rate applied is the spot rate.
SALE	Sale	Exchange rate applied is the market rate at the time of the sale.
AGRД	Agreed	Exchange rate applied is the rate agreed between the parties.

### 12.2.3.10 ExternalAccountIdentification1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external account identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

#### Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 12.2.3.11 ExternalCashAccountType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use, of the cash account in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 12.2.3.12 ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the clearing system identification code, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	5

### 12.2.3.13 ExternalContractBalanceType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies a contract balance type code, as published in the external ISO 20022 external code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 12.2.3.14 ExternalContractClosureReason1Code

*Definition:* Specifies a contract closure reason code, as published in the external ISO 20022 external code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 12.2.3.15 ExternalDocumentType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the document type as published in an external document type code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**12.2.3.16 ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external financial institution identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**12.2.3.17 ExternalLetterType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the letter type as published in an external letter type code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**12.2.3.18 ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external organisation identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**12.2.3.19 ExternalPersonIdentification1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external person identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 12.2.3.20 ExternalProxyAccountType1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external proxy account type code, as published in the proxy account type external code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 12.2.3.21 ExternalShipmentCondition1Code

*Definition:* Specifies a shipment conditions code, as published in the external ISO 20022 external code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 12.2.3.22 ExternalStatusReason1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the status reason, as published in an external status reason code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 12.2.3.23 ExternalValidationRuleIdentification1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external validation rule identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

#### Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 12.2.3.24 NamePrefix2Code

*Definition:* Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

### 12.2.3.25 PaymentScheduleType2Code

*Definition:* Specifies a payment schedule type.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CNTR	Contract	Payment schedule is defined as per contract.
ESTM	Estimated	Payment schedule is estimated.
BOTH	Both	Contract Payment schedule is both defined as per Contract and estimated.

### 12.2.3.26 PreferredContactMethod1Code

*Definition:* Preferred method used to reach the individual contact within an organisation.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.

CodeName	Name	Definition
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.

### 12.2.3.27 Priority2Code

*Definition:* Specifies the priority level of an event.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.

### 12.2.3.28 QueryType3Code

*Definition:* Specifies the nature of the request, that is whether all information be returned or only information that has changed since the last similar request was returned.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ALLL	All	Specifies that the query requests that all matching items be returned.
CHNG	Changed	Specifies that the query requests that only new matching items since the last similar query be returned.
MODF	Modified	Specifies that the query requests that only items that have changed since the last query be returned.

### 12.2.3.29 RateBasis1Code

*Definition:* Specifies a rate basis.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DAYS	Days	Rate is reported in days.
MNTH	Months	Rate is reported in months.
WEEK	Weeks	Rate is reported in weeks.
YEAR	Years	Rate is reported in years.

### 12.2.3.30 StatisticalReportingStatus1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the status of a group of statistical reporting transactions.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ACPT	Accepted	Transaction or report has been accepted.
ACTC	AcceptedTechnicalValidation	Transaction or report has passed syntactical and semantical validation.
PART	PartiallyAccepted	Report has been partially accepted. A number of transactions have been accepted, whereas another number of transactions have not yet been accepted.
PDNG	Pending	Processing of transaction or report is pending.
RCVD	Received	Report has been received.
RJCT	Rejected	Transaction or report has been rejected.
RMDR	Reminder	Reminder of a non received report.
INCF	IncorrectFilename	File containing the report has an incorrect filename.
CRPT	CorruptedFile	File containing the report is corrupted.

### 12.2.3.31 TaxExemptReason1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the reason a specific tax has not been levied/deducted on a given transaction.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
NONE	None	Account is not tax exempt.
MASA	MaxiISA	Maxi Individual Savings Account (ISA). Account is an ISA with a single ISA manager that may contain cash, stocks and shares, investment funds and life assurance up to the prescribed annual subscription limit (required for UK). The Maxi ISA allows an investor to save all three of the different elements of ISA investments that are allowed, with one savings institution in a single account.
MISA	MiniCashISA	Mini Cash Individual Savings Account (ISA). Account is an ISA with a single ISA manager that may contain cash, stocks and shares, investment funds and life assurance up to the prescribed annual subscription limit (required for UK). An investor can hold more than one Mini ISA to utilise the overall Mini ISA investment limit, and can invest with more than one savings institution, however only one of the three elements of ISA investment is allowed in a single account.
SISA	MiniStocksAndSharesISA	Mini Stocks and Shares Individual Savings Account (ISA). Account is an ISA with an ISA manager that may only contain stocks, shares and collective

CodeName	Name	Definition
		investments up to the prescribed annual subscription limit (required for UK).
IISA	MiniInsurancelSA	Mini Insurance Individual Savings Account (ISA). Account is an ISA with an ISA manager that may only contain life insurance investments up to the prescribed annual subscription limit (required for UK).
CUYP	CurrentYearPayment	Account is for current year payments into an investment retirement account (required for US).
PRYP	PriorYearPayment	Account is for a prior year payment into an investment retirement account (required for US).
ASTR	AssetTransfer	Account is for an asset transfer into an investment retirement account (required for US).
EMPY	EmployeePriorYear	Account is for employee - prior year contributions into an investment retirement account (required for US).
EMCY	EmployeeCurrentYear	Account is for employee - current year contributions into an investment retirement account (required for US).
EPRY	EmployerPriorYear	Account is for employer - prior year contributions into an investment retirement account (required for US).
ECYE	EmployerCurrentYear	Account is for employer - current year contributions into an investment retirement account (required for US).
NFPI	NonFundPrototypeIRA	Account is for non-fund prototype Individual Retirement Account (IRA) into an investment retirement account (required for US).
NFQP	NonFundQualifiedPlan	Account is for non-fund qualified plan into an investment retirement account (required for US).
DECP	DefinedContributionPlan	Account is for a defined contribution plan (required for US).
IRAC	IndividualRetirementAccount	Account is an Individual Retirement Account (IRA) (required for US).
IRAR	IndividualRetirementAccountRollover	Account is for an Individual Retirement Account (IRA) - Rollover (required for US).
KEOG	KEOGH	KEOGH. Account is a tax-deferred retirement plan designed to help self-employed workers or individuals who earn self-employed income establish a retirement savings program (required for US).
PFSP	ProfitSharingPlan	Account is a Profit Sharing Plan (required for US).

CodeName	Name	Definition
401K	FourHundredAndOneK	401k. Account is an optional retirement plan supported by many companies, in which income is invested before it is taxed (required for US).
SIRA	SelfDirectedIRA	Self-Directed Individual Retirement Account (IRA) (required for US).
403B	FourHundredAndThreeB	403(b). Account is a tax-deferred investment and savings program for employees of hospitals, educational institutions and other non-profit organisations, to save and invest in their own retirement. The name refers to the relevant section in the US Internal Revenue Code (required for US).
457X	FourHundredFiftySeven	457. Account is a non-qualified deferred compensation program that is available to state and local governments and not-for-profit employers (required for US).
RIRA	RothIRAFundPrototype	Roth Individual Retirement Account (IRA) Fund Prototype. Account is a tax-deferred retirement account based on the reverse principle of a traditional IRA. Retirement contributions are taxed upfront, but withdrawals may be made tax-free when a certain age is reached, provided the Roth IRA has been set up for a certain period of time (required for US).
RIAN	RothIRANonPrototype	Roth Individual Retirement Account (IRA) Non-Prototype. Account is a tax-deferred retirement account based on the reverse principle of a traditional IRA. Retirement contributions are taxed upfront, but withdrawals may be made tax-free when a certain age is reached, provided the Roth IRA has been set up for a certain period of time (required for US).
RCRF	RothConversionIRAFundPrototype	Roth Conversion Individual Retirement Account (IRA) Fund Prototype. Account is a retirement account established when a party switches from a regular IRA ( required for US).
RCIP	RothConversionIRANonPrototype	Roth Conversion Individual Retirement Account (IRA) Non-Prototype. Account is a retirement account established when a party switches from a Regular IRA (required for US).
EIFP	EducationIRAFundPrototype	Education Individual Retirement Account Fund Prototype (also known as an Education Savings Account). Account is a savings plan open to anyone under the age of 18. When the account owner withdraws money to pay for qualified higher education expenses, the withdrawals are generally tax-free (required for US).

CodeName	Name	Definition
EIOP	EducationIRANonPrototype	Education Individual Retirement Account Non-Prototype (also known as an Education Savings Account). Account is a savings plan open to anyone under the age of 18. When the account owner withdraws money to pay for qualified higher education expenses, the withdrawals are generally tax-free (required in the US).

## 12.2.4 Date

### 12.2.4.1 ISODate

*Definition:* A particular point in the progression of time in a calendar year expressed in the YYYY-MM-DD format. This representation is defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

*Type:* Date

## 12.2.5 DateTime

### 12.2.5.1 ISODateTime

*Definition:* A particular point in the progression of time defined by a mandatory date and a mandatory time component, expressed in either UTC time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sssZ), local time with UTC offset format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss+/-hh:mm), or local time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss). These representations are defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Note on the time format:

1) beginning / end of calendar day

00:00:00 = the beginning of a calendar day

24:00:00 = the end of a calendar day

2) fractions of second in time format

Decimal fractions of seconds may be included. In this case, the involved parties shall agree on the maximum number of digits that are allowed.

*Type:* DateTime

## 12.2.6 IdentifierSet

### 12.2.6.1 AnyBICDec2014Identifier

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial or non-financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority, as described in ISO 9362: 2014 - "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* SWIFT; AnyBICIdentifier

#### Format

pattern [A-Z0-9]{4,4}[A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{2,2}([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

#### Constraints

- **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### 12.2.6.2 BICFIDec2014Identifier

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362: 2014 - "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* SWIFT; BICIdentifier

#### Format

pattern [A-Z0-9]{4,4}[A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{2,2}([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

#### Constraints

- **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### 12.2.6.3 IBAN2007Identifier

*Definition:* The International Bank Account Number is a code used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer at a financial institution as described in the 2007 edition of the ISO 13616 standard "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" and replaced by the more recent edition of the standard.

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* National Banking Association; International Bank Account Number (ISO 13616)

#### Format

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}[0-9]{2,2}[a-zA-Z0-9]{1,30}

**Constraints**

- **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**12.2.6.4 ISINOct2015Identifier**

*Definition:* The International Securities Identification Number is a code allocated to financial instruments as well as referential instruments, as described in the ISO 6166 standard, associated with the minimum descriptive data. The ISIN consists of a prefix using the alpha-2 country codes or reserved codes specified in ISO 3166 or other prefixes as may be determined by the Registration Authority for the ISO 6166 standard, a nine characters (alphanumeric) basic code and a check digit.

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* ANNA; ISINIdentifier

**Format**

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{9,9}[0-9]{1,1}

**12.2.6.5 LEIIdentifier**

*Definition:* Legal Entity Identifier is a code allocated to a party as described in ISO 17442 "Financial Services - Legal Entity Identifier (LEI)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* Global LEI System; LEIIdentifier

**Format**

pattern [A-Z0-9]{18,18}[0-9]{2,2}

**12.2.7 Indicator****12.2.7.1 TrueFalseIndicator**

*Definition:* A flag indicating a True or False value.

*Type:* Indicator

*Meaning When True:* True

*Meaning When False:* False

**12.2.7.2 YesNoIndicator**

*Definition:* Indicates a "Yes" or "No" type of answer for an element.

*Type:* Indicator

*Meaning When True:* Yes

*Meaning When False:* No

## 12.2.8 Quantity

### 12.2.8.1 DecimalNumber

*Definition:* Number of objects represented as a decimal number, for example 0.75 or 45.6.

*Type:* Quantity

#### Format

totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	17

### 12.2.8.2 Number

*Definition:* Number of objects represented as an integer.

*Type:* Quantity

#### Format

totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	0

## 12.2.9 Rate

### 12.2.9.1 BaseOneRate

*Definition:* Rate expressed as a decimal, for example, 0.7 is 7/10 and 70%.

*Type:* Rate

#### Format

totalDigits	11
fractionDigits	10
baseValue	1.0

### 12.2.9.2 PercentageRate

*Definition:* Rate expressed as a percentage, that is, in hundredths, for example, 0.7 is 7/10 of a percent, and 7.0 is 7%.

*Type:* Rate

#### Format

totalDigits	11
fractionDigits	10
baseValue	100.0

## 12.2.10 Text

### 12.2.10.1 Exact1NumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with an exact length of 1 digit.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern [0-9]

### 12.2.10.2 Exact4AlphaNumericText

*Definition:* Specifies an alphanumeric string with a length of 4 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern [a-zA-Z0-9]{4}

### 12.2.10.3 Exact4AlphaNumericUnderscoreText

*Definition:* Specifies an alphanumeric string with a length of 4 characters, which may contain underscores. The string must not start with an underscore.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern [a-zA-Z0-9]{1}[a-zA-Z0-9\_]{3}

### 12.2.10.4 Exact5NumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with an exact length of 5 digits.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern [0-9]{5}

### 12.2.10.5 Max1025Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 1025 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength 1  
maxLength 1025

### 12.2.10.6 Max105Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 105 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	105

### 12.2.10.7 Max128Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 128 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	128

### 12.2.10.8 Max140Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 140 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	140

### 12.2.10.9 Max15NumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 15 digits.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern	[0-9]{1,15}
---------	-------------

### 12.2.10.10 Max16Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 16 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	16

### 12.2.10.11 Max2048Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 2048 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	2048

**12.2.10.12 Max256Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 256 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	256

**12.2.10.13 Max25Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 25 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	25

**12.2.10.14 Max34Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 34 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	34

**12.2.10.15 Max350Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 350 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	350

**12.2.10.16 Max35Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	35

**12.2.10.17 Max4Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**12.2.10.18 Max500Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 500 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	500

**12.2.10.19 Max70Text**

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 70 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	70

**12.2.10.20 PhoneNumber**

*Definition:* The collection of information which identifies a specific phone or FAX number as defined by telecom services.

It consists of a "+" followed by the country code (from 1 to 3 characters) then a "-" and finally, any combination of numbers, "(", ")", "+" and "-" (up to 30 characters).

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern	\+[0-9]{1,3}-[0-9()+\-\-]{1,30}
---------	---------------------------------

## 12.2.11 Time

### 12.2.11.1 ISOTime

*Definition:* A particular point in the progression of time in a calendar day expressed in either UTC time format (hh:mm:ss.sssZ), local time with UTC offset format (hh:mm:ss.sss+/-hh:mm), or local time format (hh:mm:ss.sss). These representations are defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Note on the time format:

1) beginning / end of calendar day

00:00:00 = the beginning of a calendar day

24:00:00 = the end of a calendar day

2) fractions of second in time format

Decimal fractions of seconds may be included. In this case, the involved parties shall agree on the maximum number of digits that are allowed.

*Type:* Time